

## **Appendix C**

### **Site-Specific Coding Modules**

Appendix C  
Table of Contents

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| <b>Introduction to Appendix C</b> .....                                 | <b>1</b> |
| <b>Oral Cavity</b>  |          |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Head and Neck <sup>1</sup> |          |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations .....   | 3        |
| Flowchart   |          |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 15       |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 20       |
| Matrix  |          |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 25       |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 29       |
| Text  |          |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 33       |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 35       |
| CS Staging Schemas  |          |
| Lip, Upper.....   | 39       |
| Lip, Lower .....  | 48       |
| Other Lip.....  | 57       |
| Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil.....                                     | 66       |
| Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS.....               | 75       |
| Gum, Upper .....  | 84       |
| Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area Retromolar Gingiva (Trigone).....        | 92       |
| Gum, NOS .....  | 101      |
| Floor of Mouth.....   | 110      |
| Hard Palate.....  | 119      |
| Soft Palate, Uvula .....  | 128      |
| Other Mouth.....  | 137      |
| Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule.....                                   | 146      |
| Surgery Codes: Oral Cavity <sup>4</sup> .....                           | 155      |
| <b>Parotid, Other and Unspecified Glands</b>                            |          |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-3 <sup>1</sup> .....          | 156      |
| CS Staging Schemas  |          |
| Parotid Gland .....   | 157      |
| Submandibular Gland .....   | 166      |
| Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands.....                        | 175      |
| Surgery Codes: Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands <sup>4</sup> .....  | 183      |
| <b>Pharynx, Tonsil, Oropharynx, hypopharynx, Pyriform Sinus</b>         |          |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-3 <sup>1</sup> .....          | 185      |
| CS Staging Schemas  |          |
| Tonsil, Oropharynx.....   | 186      |
| Anterior Surface of Epiglottis.....                                     | 195      |
| Nasopharynx .....   | 204      |
| Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx.....                        | 213      |
| Pharynx, NOS, and other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites.....              | 222      |
| Surgery Codes   |          |
| Pharynx <sup>4</sup> .....  | 229      |
| All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                                      | 231      |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Esophagus</b>  |     |
| Coding Guidelines .....   | 233 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 234 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Esophagus .....                                  | 235 |
| Surgery Codes: Esophagus <sup>4</sup> .....                         | 242 |
| <b>Stomach</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 243 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Stomach.....                                     | 244 |
| Surgery Codes: Stomach.....   | 251 |
| <b>Small Intestine</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 253 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Small Intestine.....                             | 254 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                   | 259 |
| <b>Colon</b>  |     |
| Coding Guidelines .....   | 260 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Colon <sup>1</sup>     |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Illustrations .....               | 261 |
| Flowchart   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 265 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 270 |
| Matrix  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 281 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 283 |
| Text  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 291 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 293 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Colon.....                                       | 297 |
| Surgery Codes: Colon <sup>4</sup> .....                             | 305 |
| <b>Rectosigmoid, Rectum</b>   |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 307 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Rectosigmoid, Rectum .....                       | 308 |
| Surgery Codes   |     |
| Rectosigmoid <sup>4</sup> .....                                     | 315 |
| Rectum <sup>4</sup> .....   | 317 |
| <b>Anus</b>   |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 319 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Anus .....                                       | 320 |
| Surgery Codes: Anus <sup>4</sup> .....                              | 324 |
| <b>Liver, Intrahepatic Bile Ducts</b>                               |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 325 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts .....          | 326 |
| Surgery Codes: Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts <sup>4</sup> ..... | 332 |
| <b>Gallbladder, Extrahepatic Bile Ducts, Ampulla of Vater</b>       |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....     | 333 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Gallbladder .....   | 334 |
| Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s).....                                      | 339 |
| Ampulla of Vater .....  | 343 |
| Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS .....                                | 347 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                   | 351 |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Pancreas</b>   |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....       | 352 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Pancreas Head.....  | 353 |
| Pancreas Body and Tail .....  | 358 |
| Pancreas Other and Unspecified.....                                   | 363 |
| Surgery Codes: Pancreas <sup>4</sup> .....                            | 367 |
| <b>Other Digestive</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....       | 368 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs .....       | 369 |
| Surgery Codes: see All Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>4</sup> .....       | 373 |
| <b>Nasal Cavity, Middle Ear</b>                                       |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-3 <sup>1</sup> .....        | 375 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Nasal Cavity.....   | 376 |
| Middle Ear .....  | 384 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                     | 392 |
| <b>Sinuses</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-3 <sup>1</sup> .....        | 393 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Maxillary Sinus.....  | 394 |
| Ethmoid Sinus.....  | 402 |
| Accessory (Paranasal) Sinus.....                                      | 411 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                     | 419 |
| <b>Larynx</b>   |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-3 <sup>1</sup> .....        | 420 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Glottic Larynx.....   | 421 |
| Supraglottic Larynx .....   | 430 |
| Subglottic Larynx .....   | 439 |
| Larynx, Overlapping Lesion or Not Otherwise Specified .....           | 448 |
| Surgery Codes: Larynx <sup>4</sup> .....                              | 457 |
| <b>Trachea</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....       | 459 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Trachea .....                                      | 460 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                     | 464 |
| <b>Lung</b>   |     |
| Coding Guidelines .....   | 465 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Lung <sup>1</sup>        |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations ..... | 467 |
| Flowchart   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 475 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 480 |
| Matrix  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 487 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 490 |
| Text  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 495 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 497 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Lung .....   | 501 |
| Surgery Codes: Lung <sup>4</sup> .....                                | 510 |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Heart, Mediastinum, Pleura</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 512 |
| CS Staging Schemas   |     |
| Heart, Mediastinum .....   | 513 |
| Pleura .....   | 517 |
| Other and Ill-Defined Respiratory Sites and Intrathoracic Organs .....   | 522 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....  | 526 |
| <b>Bones, Joints, Cartilage</b>  |     |
| Coding Guidelines .....  | 527 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 528 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Bone .....  | 529 |
| Surgery Codes: Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage; Peripheral Nerves<br>and Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and<br>Other Soft Tissues <sup>4</sup> ..... | 533 |
| <b>Skin</b>  |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 534 |
| CS Staging Schemas   |     |
| Skin <sup>3</sup> .....  | 535 |
| Skin of Eyelid .....   | 540 |
| Surgery Codes: Skin <sup>4</sup> .....   | 544 |
| <b>Melanoma</b>  |     |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Cutaneous Melanoma  |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Illustrations .....  | 547 |
| Flowchart  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 553 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 556 |
| Matrix   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 561 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 563 |
| Text   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 565 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 567 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Malignant Melanoma of Skin, Vulva, Penis, Scrotum (8720-8790).....  | 569 |
| Surgery Codes  |     |
| Skin <sup>4</sup> .....  | 578 |
| All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....   | 580 |
| <b>Mycosis Fungoides, Sezary Disease</b>   |     |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 581 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Mycosis Fungoides and Sezary disease of Skin, vulva,<br>Penis, Scrotum (9700-9701) .....  | 582 |
| Surgery Codes  |     |
| Skin <sup>4</sup> .....  | 586 |
| All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....   | 588 |
| <b>Nerves, Nervous System, Soft Tissues</b>  |     |
| Coding Guidelines: Bones, Joints, Cartilage .....  | 589 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 590 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System;<br>Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues.....  | 591 |
| Surgery Codes: Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage; Peripheral Nerves and<br>Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and<br>Other Soft Tissues <sup>4</sup> ..... | 597 |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### **Retroperitoneum, Peritoneum**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 598 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Retroperitoneum and Peritonuem.....          | 599 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....               | 603 |

### **Breast**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Breast .....                                  | 605 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Breast <sup>1</sup> |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....     | 609 |
| Flowchart  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....                                      | 617 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....                                      | 621 |
| Matrix   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....                                      | 633 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....                                      | 635 |
| Text   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....                                      | 643 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....                                      | 645 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Breast .....                                  | 651 |
| Surgery Codes: Breast <sup>4</sup> .....                         | 662 |

### **Vulva, Vagina**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 665 |
| CS Staging Schemes  |     |
| Vulva.....  | 666 |
| Vagina.....   | 671 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....               | 675 |

### **Cervix Uteri**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 676 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Cervix Uteri.....                            | 677 |
| Surgery Codes: Cervix Uteri <sup>4</sup> .....                  | 684 |

### **Corpus Uteri, Uterus, NOS**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 686 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Corpus Uteri; Uterus, NOS .....              | 687 |
| Surgery Codes: Corpus Uteri <sup>4</sup> .....                  | 692 |

### **Ovary**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 694 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Ovary <sup>4</sup> .....                     | 695 |
| Surgery Codes: Ovary <sup>4</sup> .....                         | 701 |

### **Fallopian Tube, Ligaments, Adnexa**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 703 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Fallopian Tube .....  | 704 |
| Broad and Round Ligaments, Parametrium, Uterine Adnexa .....    | 710 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....               | 714 |

### **Other and Unspecified Female Genital Organs, Placenta**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 715 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Other and Unspecified Female Genital Organs .....               | 716 |
| Placenta.....   | 720 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....               | 725 |

### **Penis**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 726 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Penis <sup>3</sup> .....                     | 727 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....               | 731 |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### Prostate

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 732 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Prostate (excludes transitional cell carcinoma of the prostatic ducts and prostatic urethra. See Urethra pg C-925)..... | 733 |
| Surgery Codes: Prostate <sup>4</sup> .....   | 747 |

### Testis

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 749 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Testis .....                                 | 750 |
| Surgery Codes: Testis <sup>4</sup> .....                        | 756 |

### Other and Unspecified male Genital Organs

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....                       | 757 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Other and Unspecified Male Genital Organs (excludes Kaposi sarcoma and lymphoma)..... | 758 |
| Scrotum <sup>3</sup> .....  | 763 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....                                     | 767 |

### Kidney

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....           | 769 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Kidney <sup>1</sup>   |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....       | 770 |
| Flowchart  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 775 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 780 |
| Matrix   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 787 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 790 |
| Text   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....  | 793 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....  | 795 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Kidney (Renal Parenchyma) .....                 | 799 |
| Surgery Codes: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter <sup>4</sup> ..... | 803 |

### Renal Pelvis, Ureter

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....  | 805 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary <sup>1</sup> |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....  | 806 |
| Flowchart   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 813 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 817 |
| Matrix  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 823 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 825 |
| Text  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 829 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 831 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....  | 935 |
| Surgery Codes: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter <sup>4</sup> .....  | 839 |

### Bladder

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Bladder.....  | 841 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary pg C-871 <sup>1</sup> ..... | 845 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Bladder .....   | 846 |
| Surgery Codes: Bladder <sup>4</sup> .....  | 852 |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### Urethra, Other Urinary

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary<br>pg C-871 <sup>1</sup> ..... | 854 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| Urethra .....   | 855 |
| Paraurethral Gland, Overlapping lesion of Urinary Organs and<br>Unspecified Urinary Organs .....      | 859 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....   | 863 |

### Eye

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> .....  | 864 |
| CS Staging Schemas   |     |
| Conjunctiva (excludes retinoblastoma, malignant melanoma,<br>Kaposi sarcoma and lymphoma) .....  | 865 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Conjunctiva (8720-8790) .....  | 869 |
| Cornea, Retina, Choroid, Ciliary body (Iris, Lens, Sclera, Uveal Tract),<br>Eyeball, Overlapping and Other Eye (excludes melanoma and<br>retinoblastoma) ..... | 874 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Iris and Ciliary Body (8720-8790) .....  | 878 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Choroid (8720-8790) .....  | 884 |
| Malignant Melanoma of Other Eye (8720-8790) .....  | 889 |
| Lacrimal Gland .....   | 892 |
| Orbit .....  | 895 |
| Retinoblastoma (9510-9514) .....   | 898 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....  | 904 |

### Brain, Central Nervous System, Malignant

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Brain .....   | 905 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Brain, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves,<br>Pituitary gland, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland <sup>1</sup> |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts and Illustrations .....  | 906 |
| Flowchart  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....   | 914 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....   | 918 |
| Matrix   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....   | 922 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....   | 924 |
| Text   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....   | 926 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....   | 928 |
| CS Staging Schemas   |     |
| Brain and Cerebral Meninges .....  | 930 |
| Other Parts of Central Nervous System .....  | 935 |
| Surgery Codes: Brain <sup>4</sup> .....  | 939 |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### **Brain, Central Nervous System, Benign and Borderline**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Brain .....  | 940 |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Benign and Borderline Primary<br>Intracranial and CNS Tumors |     |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts and Illustrations .....   | 941 |
| Flowchart   |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....  | 947 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....  | 952 |
| Matrix  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....  | 956 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....  | 959 |
| Text  |     |
| Multiple Primary Rules .....  | 961 |
| Histology Coding Rules .....  | 963 |
| CS Staging Schemas  |     |
| See Brain and Cerebral Meninges pg C-1007 .....   | 965 |
| See Other Parts of Central Nervous System pg C-1011 .....   | 965 |
| Surgery Codes: Brain <sup>4</sup> .....   | 966 |

### **Thyroid**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Thyroid Gland .....                          | 967 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 968 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Thyroid Gland .....                          | 969 |
| Surgery Codes: Thyroid Gland <sup>4</sup> .....                 | 976 |

### **Thymus, Adrenal and Other Endocrine Glands**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| MP/H Coding Rules:   |     |
| For Malignant Pituitary, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal Gland (C751-C753)<br>See Malignant Meninges, Brain, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves,<br>Pituitary gland, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland pg C-981 .....                             | 977 |
| For Benign, Borderline Pituitary, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland<br>Multiple Primary Rules: See Benign and Borderline Primary<br>Intracranial and CNS Tumors pg C-1017 .....   | 977 |
| For Thymus, Adrenal gland, Carotid body, Aortic body and other<br>paraganglia, Overlapping lesion of endocrine glands and related<br>structures and Endocrine gland<br>NOS (C379, C740-C741, C749, C754-C759)<br>See Other Sites pg C-1011 ..... | 977 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Thymus, Adrenal (Suprarenal) Gland, and<br>Other Endocrine Glands .....   | 978 |
| Surgery Codes: All Other Sites <sup>4</sup> .....  | 983 |

### **Kaposi Sarcoma**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Coding Guidelines: Kaposi Sarcoma of All Sites .....            | 984 |
| MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1011 <sup>2</sup> ..... | 985 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Kaposi Sarcoma of All Sites (9140) .....     | 986 |
| Surgery Codes: see site-specific codes .....                    | 990 |

### **Lymphoma**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Coding Guidelines: Lymph Nodes .....   | 991  |
| Multiple Primary Rules: Hematopoietic Primaries .....                                  | 993  |
| CS Staging Scheme: Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas of All Sites<br>(9590-9729) ..... | 995  |
| Surgery Codes  |      |
| Lymph Nodes .....  | 1001 |
| See site-specific codes .....  | 1002 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative</b>   |      |
| Multiple Primary Rules: see Hematopoietic Primaries pg C-1003 .....   | 1003 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative,<br>and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms (9731-9734, 9740-9742, 9750-9758,<br>9760-9762, 9764-9769, 9800-9801, 9805, 9820, 9823, 9826-9827,<br>9831-9837, 9840, 9860-9861, 9863, 9866-9867, 9870-9876, 9891,<br>9895-9897, 9910, 9920, 9930-9931, 9940, 9945-9946, 9948, 9950,<br>9960-9964, 9970, 9975, 9980, 9982-9987, 9989)..... | 1005 |
| Surgery Codes:  |      |
| Hematopoietic/Reticuloendothelial/Immunoproliferative/Myeloproliferative<br>Disease .....   | 1010 |
| <b>Other and Unknown Sites</b>  |      |
| Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Other Sites <sup>2</sup>   |      |
| Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Tables.....   | 1012 |
| Flowchart   |      |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 1017 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 1025 |
| Matrix  |      |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 1043 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 1047 |
| Text  |      |
| Multiple Primary Rules.....   | 1059 |
| Histology Coding Rules.....   | 1062 |
| CS Staging Scheme: Other and Ill-Defined Sites, Unknown Primary Site.....   | 1069 |
| C42 excludes hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative<br>and myeloproliferative neoplasms, Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin<br>lymphomas, and Kaposi sarcoma  |      |
| C77 excludes hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative<br>and myeloproliferative neoplasms, Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin<br>lymphomas, and Kaposi sarcoma  |      |
| Surgery Codes   |      |
| See Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative, and<br>Myeloproliferative Disease pg C-1072.....   | 1072 |
| Spleen <sup>4</sup> .....   | 1073 |
| Unknown and Ill-Defined Primary Sites <sup>4</sup> .....  | 1074 |
| <b>CS Staging Schemes</b>   |      |
| Standard Tables.....  | 1080 |

Footnotes

1. Excludes lymphoma and leukemia (9590 – 9989) and Kaposi sarcoma (9140)
2. Excludes lymphoma and leukemia (9590 – 9989)
3. Excludes malignant melanoma, Kaposi sarcoma, mycosis fungoides, Sezary disease and other lymphomas.
4. Excludes 9750, 9760 – 9764, 9800 – 9820, 9826, 9831 – 9920, 9931 – 9964, 9980 – 9989. For these histologies, see Surgery Codes Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative Disease pg C-1072.

## Appendix C

### Site-Specific Coding Modules

The site-specific coding modules are stand-alone coding manuals that include SEER Coding Guidelines; Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables, Charts and Illustrations; Multiple Primary Rules; Histology Coding Rules; Collaborative Staging Coding Instructions and Surgery of Primary Site codes. In the past, site-specific instructions were scattered throughout the SEER Program Code Manual. Staging rules and codes were in a separate manual from all other coding rules and codes. As part of the SEER commitment to continuing Quality Improvement, this appendix brings together the site-specific instructions needed to abstract a case, facilitating efficiency and accuracy. General instructions in the main manual are applicable in the absence of site-specific instructions. All modules include the collaborative staging and surgery codes, and multiple primary and histology coding rules. In addition, some modules include site-specific coding guidelines. The goal is to have stand-alone modules for major anatomic sites. SEER will continue to work toward this goal by enhancing site-specific guidelines as modules are expanded and revised.

Part II of the Collaborative Staging manual is included in this appendix. For an introduction to Collaborative Staging, see Part I of the Collaborative Staging Manual and Coding Instructions.

The surgery codes are based on the American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer's *Facility Oncology Registry Data System*, American College of Surgeons, Chicago, IL, 2004 (FORDS), Appendix B: Site-specific Surgery Codes (Revised 2004). The surgery codes in this document are identical to the FORDS manual; only formatting and annotations may vary. The **SEER Notes** that appear in the Surgery Code sections contain information or instructions not found in FORDS or that are different from FORDS.

**Oral Cavity  
C000-C069**

**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**Guidelines for Head and Neck**

The head and neck rules cover the following sites: Lip C000-C009, Oral Cavity C019-C069, Salivary Gland C079-C089, Tonsil C090-C099, Oropharynx C100-C109, Nasopharynx C110-C119, Pyriform Sinus C129, Hypopharynx C130-C139, Other and Ill-defined Sites in Lip, Oral cavity and Pharynx C140-C148, Nasal Cavity C300, Middle Ear C301, Accessory Sinuses C310-C319, and Larynx C320-C329.

Head and neck tumors frequently extend into adjacent anatomic sites, or overlap multiple contiguous sites. The workup for these tumors often includes physical examinations, imaging, scans, endoscopies, biopsies and surgical observations. Each of these diagnostic tools provides a unique view of the tumor. More than one anatomic location may be involved with tumor and reports may contain conflicting information regarding the primary site.

**Coding the Primary Site**

Code the site where the tumor **originated**; do not simply code the biopsy site.

When there are multiple biopsies and the primary site is not documented, or when there is discrepant information, code the primary site using the following priority order.

**Priority Order**

1. Tumor board
  - a. Specialty
  - b. General
2. Staging physician's site assignment
  - a. AJCC staging form
  - b. TNM statement in medical record

**If neither 1 nor 2 are available, the priority order for using information depends upon whether the patient had a surgical resection of the primary tumor.**

3. Total (complete) resection of primary tumor  
*Note:* The primary tumor is completely removed. The surgical margins may be microscopically positive.
  - a. Surgeon's statement from operative report
  - b. Final diagnosis from pathology report

|  |
|--|
| <b>Head and Neck Terms and Definitions</b> |
|--|

**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

4. No resection (biopsy only):  
 Documentation from:
- a. Endoscopy (physical exam with scope)
  - b. Radiation oncologist
  - c. Diagnosing physician
  - d. Primary care physician
  - e. Other physician
  - f. Radiologist impression from diagnostic imaging
  - g. Physician statement based on physical exam (clinical impression)

When the point of origin **cannot be determined**, use a topography code for overlapping sites:

- C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue
- C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands
- C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity, and pharynx.

### Equivalent or Equal Terms

- In situ, noninvasive, intraepithelial
- Squamous cell carcinoma, squamous cell epithelioma, epidermoid carcinoma
- Tumor, mass, lesion, neoplasm
- Contiguous, continuous

### Definitions

**In Situ:** A tumor that is confined to the epithelium without penetration of the basement membrane

**Invasive:** A tumor that penetrates the basement membrane and involves at least the lamina propria

**Most invasive:** The tumor with the greatest continuous extension (see focal and foci definitions in the general instructions). The least to the greatest extension for mouth and oral cavity:

- epithelium
- lamina propria, submucosa (not found in gum and hard palate)
- muscularis propria (not found in gum and hard palate)

**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**Table 1 –Paired Sites**

**Table Instructions:** Use this table to determine multiple primary status for sites listed in Column 1.

| <b>Column 1:<br/>Paired Sites</b> | <b>Column 2:<br/>Code</b> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Parotid Glands                    | C079                      |
| Major Salivary Glands             | C080; C081                |
| Tonsils                           | C090; C091; C098, C099    |
| Nasal Cavity                      | C300                      |
| Accessory Sinuses                 | C310; C312                |
| Middle Ear                        | C301                      |

**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**Table 2 – Changes to Previous SEER Site Grouping Table**

Previous to 2007, tumors in sites on the same row were abstracted as a single primary.

| Code | Site Groupings                              |
|------|---|
| C01  | Base of tongue                              |
| C02  | Other and unspecified parts of tongue       |
| C05  | Palate                                      |
| C06  | Other and unspecified parts of mouth        |
| C07  | Parotid gland                               |
| C08  | Other and unspecified major salivary glands |
| C09  | Tonsil                                      |
| C10  | Oropharynx                                  |
| C12  | Pyriiform sinus                             |
| C13  | Hypopharynx                                 |
| C30  | Nasal cavity and middle ear                 |
| C31  | Accessory sinuses                           |

Do not use for cases diagnosed on or after 2007

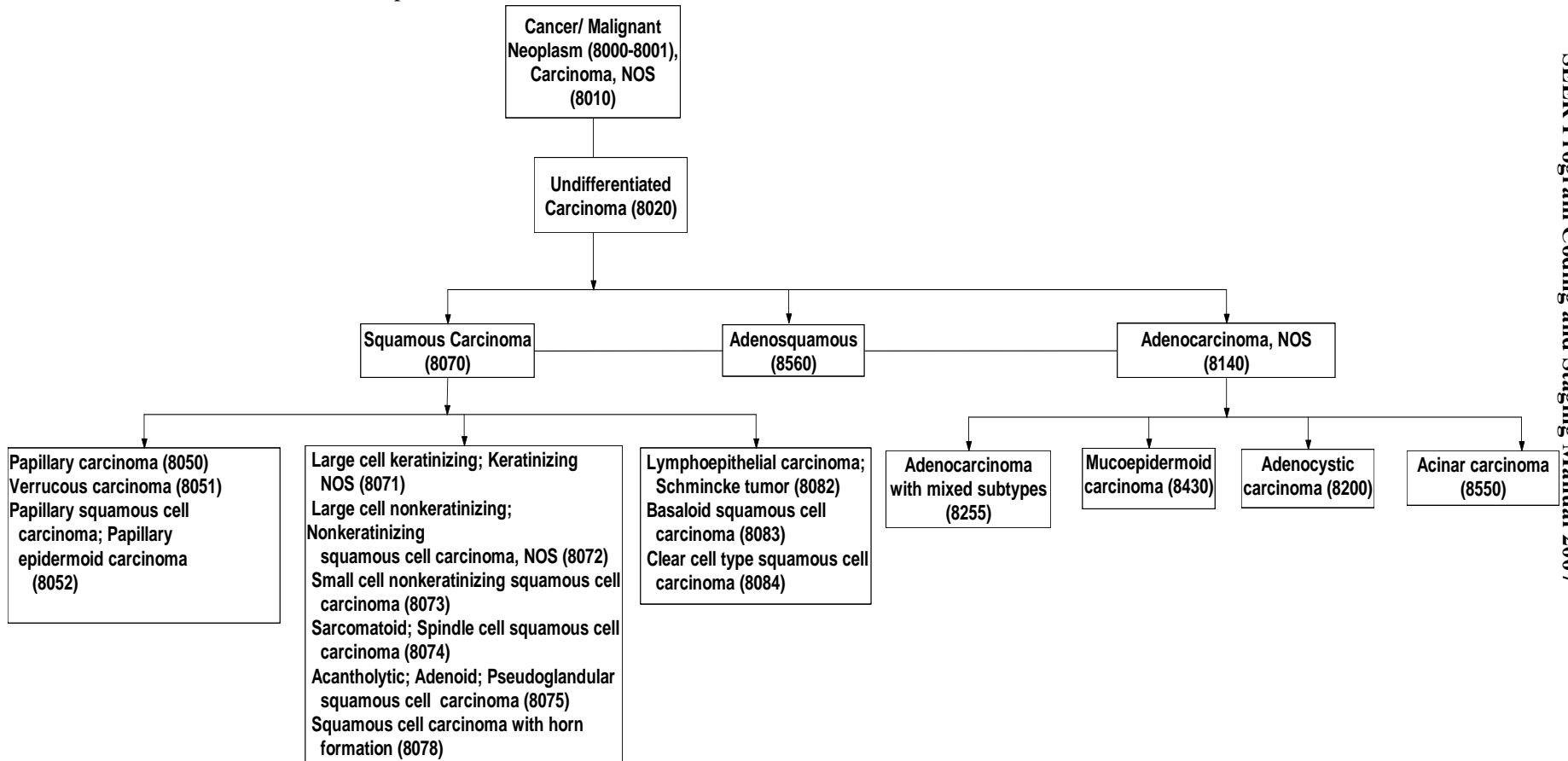


**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

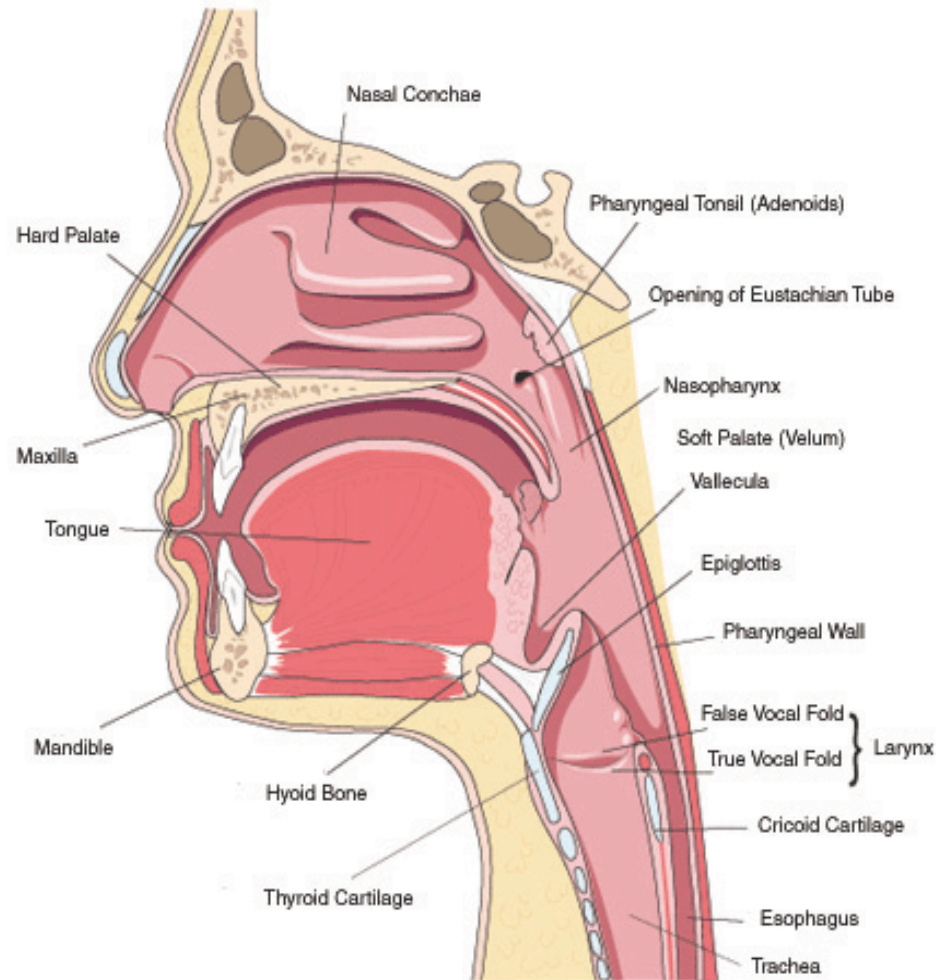
**Chart 1 – Head and Neck Histology Groups and Specific types**

*Note:* Greater than 85% of cancers in the Head and Neck are squamous cell carcinoma

**Chart Instructions:** Use this chart with the histology rules to code the most specific histologic term. The tree is arranged in descending order. Each branch is a histology group, starting with the NOS or group terms and descending into the specific types for that group. As you follow the branch down, the terms become more specific.

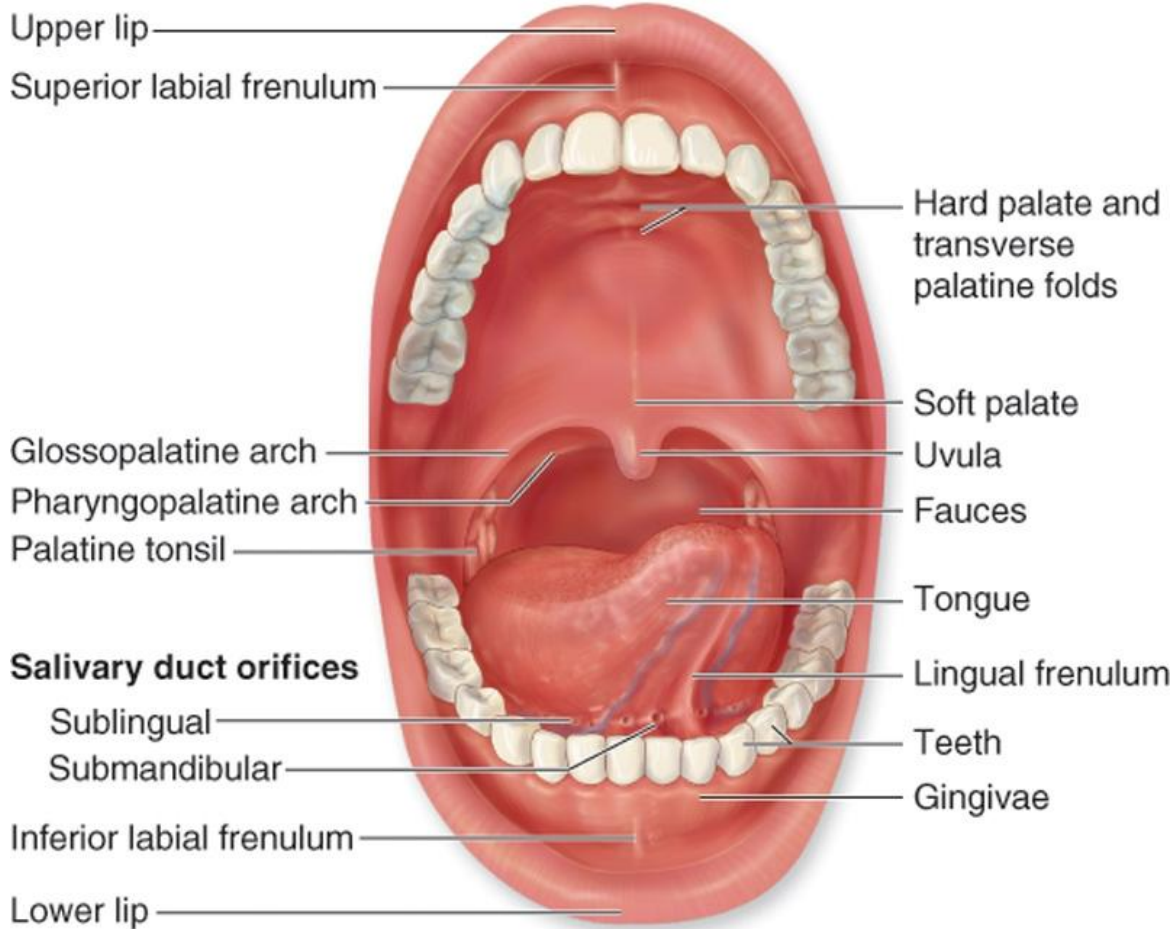


**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
C000-C148, C300-C329  
(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

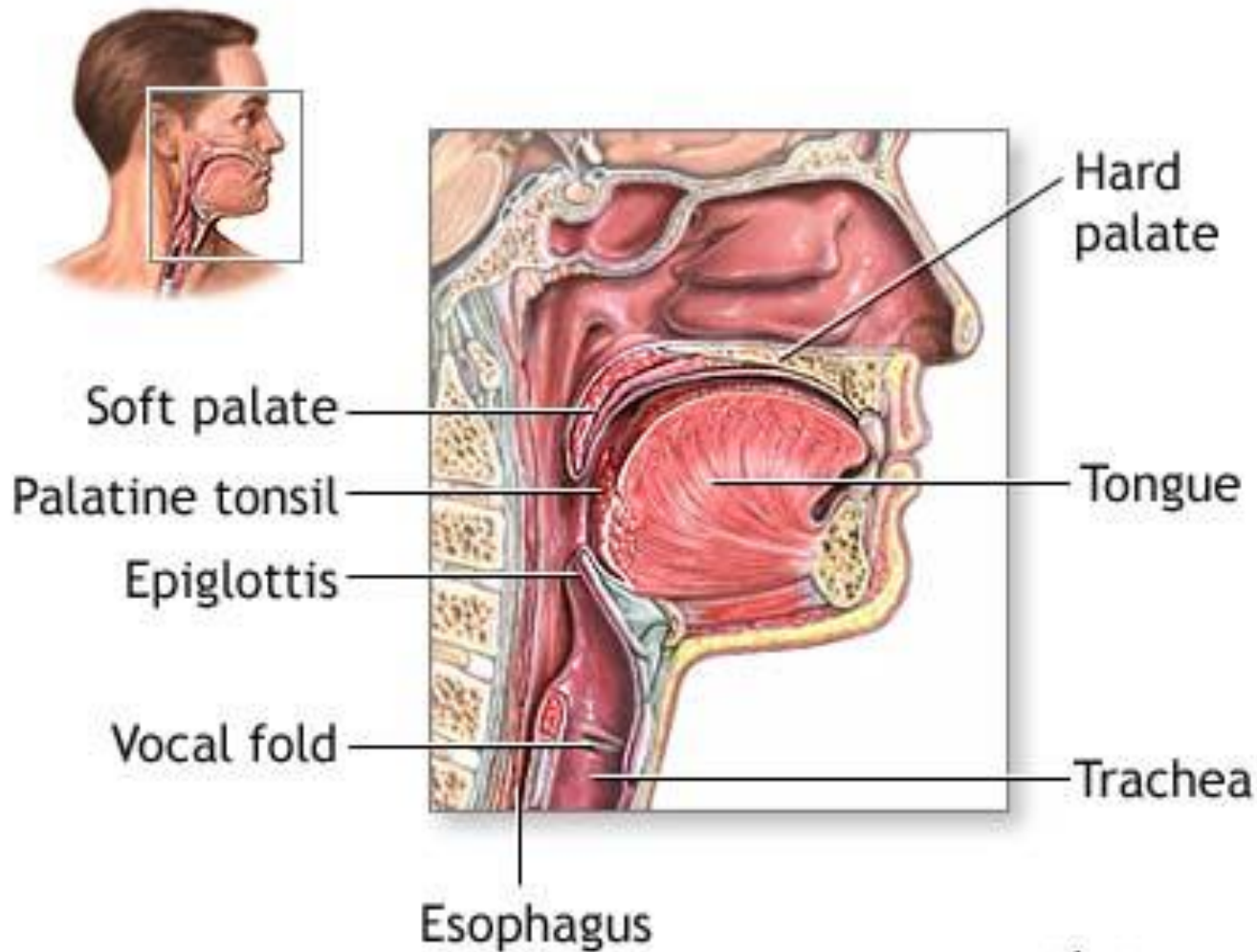
Copyright © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Permission required for reproduction or display.



**(a)**

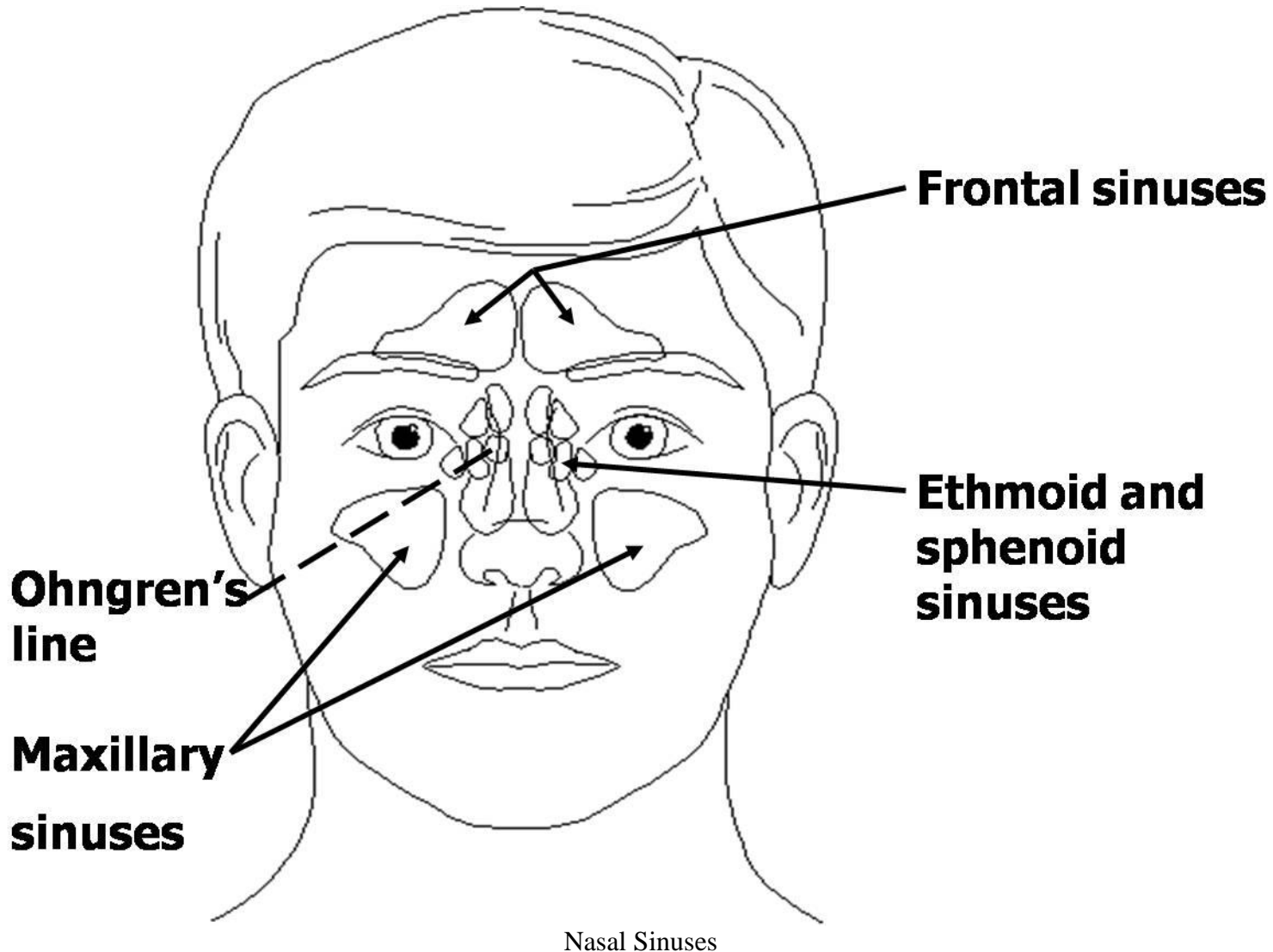
Image used with licensed permission.

**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
C000-C148, C300-C329  
(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

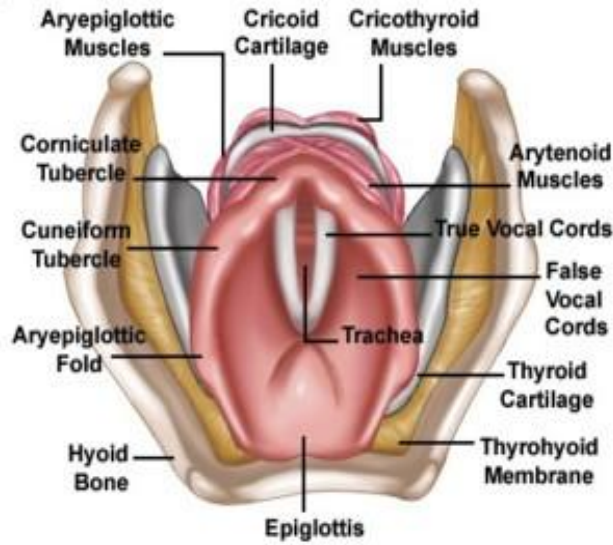
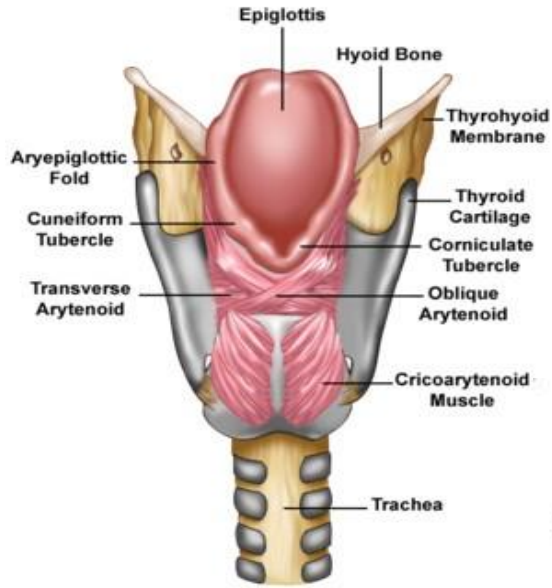


A.D.A.M illustration used with licensed permission. All rights reserved

Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations  
C000-C148, C300-C329  
(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

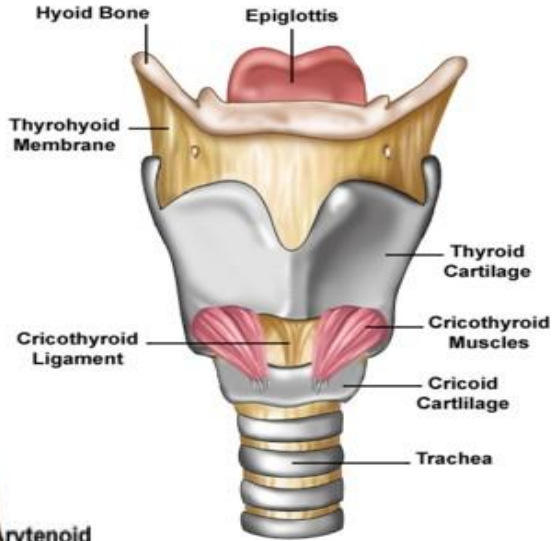


Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations  
 C000-C148, C300-C329  
 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



Larynx

Illustrations used with permission of Blue Tree Publishing



**Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

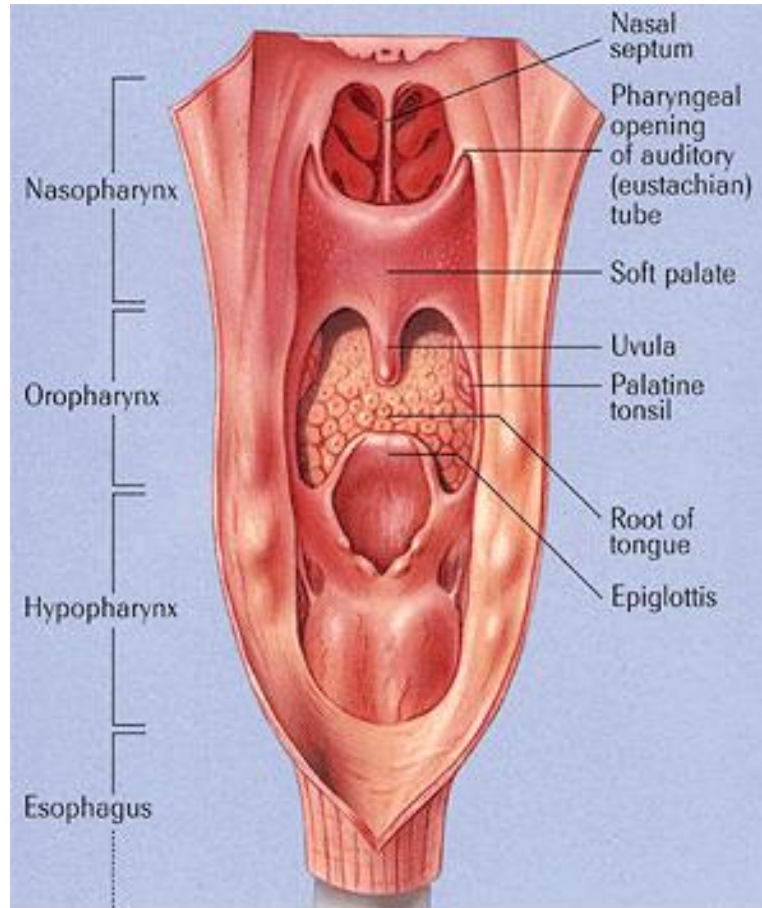


Image made available by a generous grant from Bristol-Myers Squibb

This page left blank

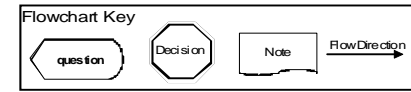
Head and Neck Terms and Definitions



### Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



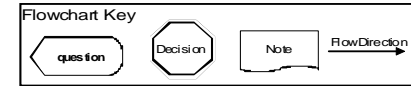
\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

\*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

| UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS  | DECISION   | NOTES   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>M1</p> <pre> graph TD     Q1{{Is it impossible to determine if there is a single tumor or multiple tumors?}}     Q1 -- YES --&gt; D1{{SINGLE Primary*}}     Q1 -- NO --&gt; N1[Go to Single Tumor or Multiple Tumors]             </pre> | <p>SINGLE Primary*</p> <p>End of instructions for Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors</p> | <p><b>Tumor(s) not described as metastasis.</b></p> <p><b>Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted.</b></p> <p><i>Example 1:</i> History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary.</p> <p><i>Example 2:</i> Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary.</p> |
| SINGLE TUMOR  | DECISION   | NOTES   |
| <p>M2</p> <pre> graph TD     Q2{{Is there a single tumor?}}     Q2 -- YES --&gt; D2{{SINGLE Primary*}}     Q2 -- NO --&gt; N2[Go to Multiple Tumors.]             </pre>  | <p>SINGLE Primary*</p> <p>End of instructions for Single Tumor.</p>                        | <p><b>1. Tumor not described as metastasis.</b></p> <p><b>2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive</b></p> <p><b>The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.</b></p>   |

### Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)  
 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



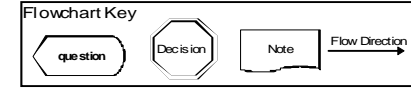
- \* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.
- \*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

| <b>MULTIPLE TUMORS</b><br>Multiple tumors may be a single primary or multiple primaries.        | <b>DECISION</b>                   | <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Tumors not described as metastases.<br>2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive. |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>M3</b><br>Are there tumors in both the left and right sides of a paired site?                | YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b> | See Table 1 for list of paired sites.   |
| <b>M4</b><br>Are there tumors on the upper lip (C000 or C003) and the lower lip (C001 or C004)? | YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b> |   |
| <b>M5</b><br>Are there tumors on the upper gum (C030) and the lower gum (C031)?                 | YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b> |   |
| <b>M6</b><br>Are there tumors in the nasal cavity (C300) and the middle ear (C301)?             | YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b> |   |
| NO → <b>Next Page</b>   |                                   |   |

### Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

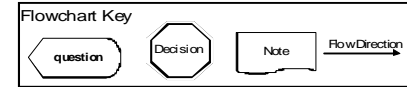
\*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

| MULTIPLE TUMORS, continued   | DECISION                                 | NOTES   |
|--|--|---|
| <p><b>M7</b></p> <p>Are there tumors in sites with ICD-O-3 topography codes that are different at the second (Cxx) and/or third character (Cxx)?</p> <p>NO</p> | <p>YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b></p> | <p>1. Tumors not described as metastases.<br/>2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive.</p>   |
| <p><b>M8</b></p> <p>Is there an invasive tumor following an in situ tumor more than 60 days after diagnosis?</p> <p>NO</p>                                     | <p>YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b></p> | <p>1. The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed.<br/>2. Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease.</p> |
| <p><b>M9</b></p> <p>Are there tumors diagnosed more than five (5) years apart?</p> <p>NO</p> <p>Next Page</p>  | <p>YES → <b>MULTIPLE Primaries**</b></p> |   |

### Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flow chart

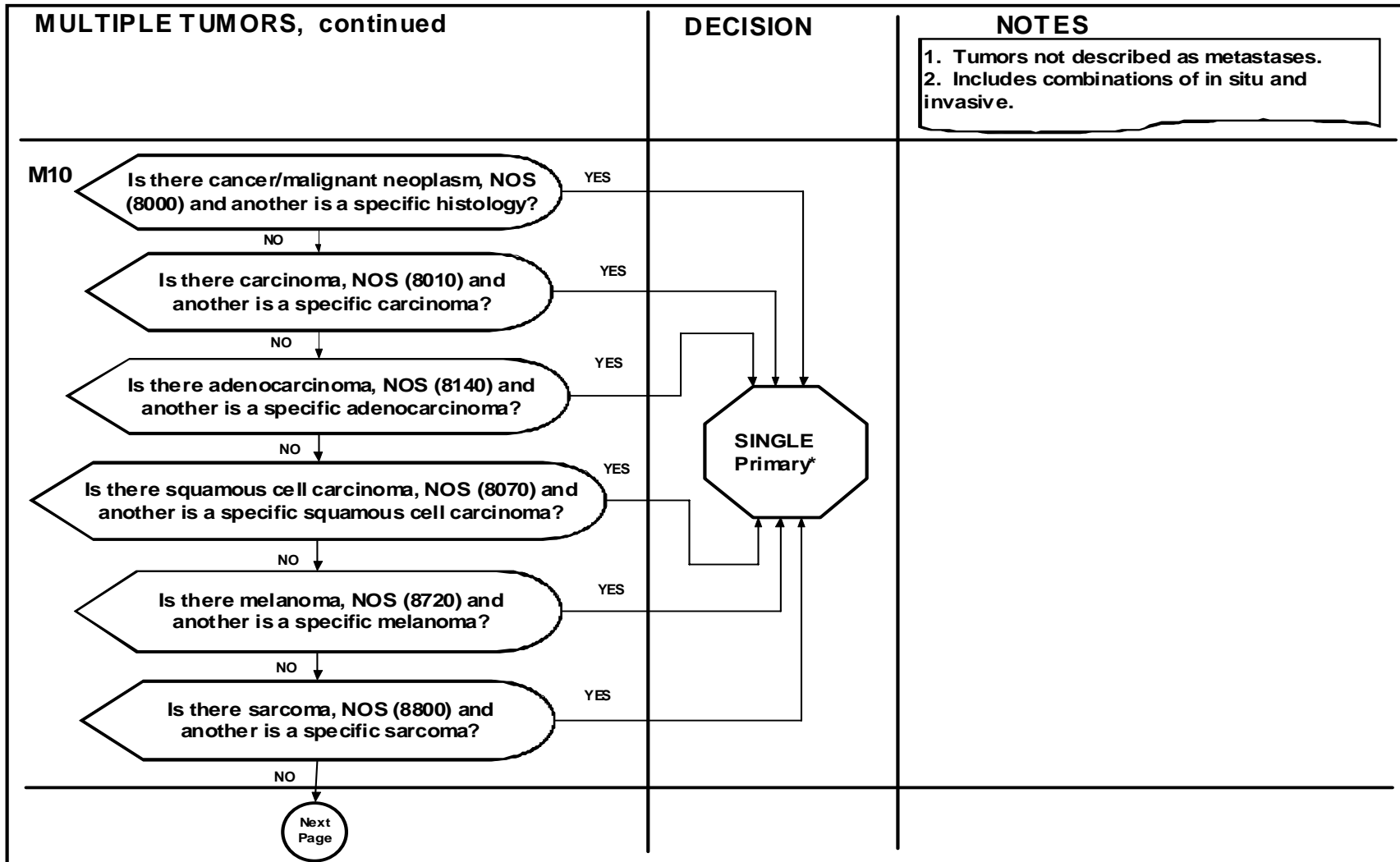
(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

\*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.



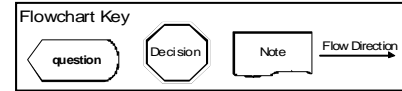
# Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

\*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.



| MULTIPLE TUMORS, continued   | DECISION  | NOTES  |
|--|---|--|
| <p><b>M11</b></p>  | <p><b>MULTIPLE Primary**</b></p>  | <p>Tumors not described as metastases.</p>   |
| <p><b>M12</b></p>  | <p><b>SINGLE Primary*</b></p> <p>End of instructions for Multiple Tumors.</p> | <p>1. When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.</p> <p>2. All cases covered by Rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histology code.</p> |
| <p><b>ERROR: Recheck rules. Stop when a match is found.</b></p>  |   |  |
| <p><b>Rule M12 Examples:</b> The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary.<br/> <b>Warning:</b> Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors.</p> |   |  |
| <p>Example 1. Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth</p>  | <p>Example 2. An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days</p>      | <p>Example 3. In situ following an invasive tumor or more than 60 days apart</p>   |

# Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

## SINGLE TUMOR



| Rule             | Action | Notes and Examples  |
|------------------|--------|---|
| <p><b>H1</b></p> |        | <p><b>1. Priority for using documents to code the histology</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings</li> <li>o Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record</li> <li>o CT, PET or MRI scans</li> </ul> <p><b>2. Code the specific histology when documented.</b></p> <p><b>3. Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.</b></p> |
| <p><b>H2</b></p> |        |   |
| <p><b>H3</b></p> |        | <p><i>Example:</i> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis.</p>   |
| <p><b>H4</b></p> |        | <p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071).</p>   |

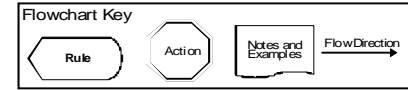
Next Page

# Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

## SINGLE TUMOR



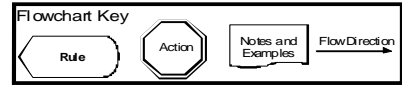
| Rule   | Action  | Notes and Examples   |
|--|---|--|
| <p><b>H5</b></p> <p>Are there multiple histologies within the same branch such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology? OR</li> <li>● carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma? OR</li> <li>● squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma? OR</li> <li>● adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma? OR</li> <li>● melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma? OR</li> <li>● sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma?</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;">Yes</p> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p> | <p>Code the most specific histologic term using Chart 1</p> | <p>1. The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050)</p> |
| <p><b>H6</b></p>   | <p>Code the numerically higher ICD-O-3 histology code.</p>  |  |

This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.  
Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.

# Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



## MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY

| Rule                                  | Action | Notes and Examples   |
|---------------------------------------|--------|--|
| <p><b>H7</b></p> <p>YES</p> <p>NO</p> |        | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Priority for using documents to code the histology <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings</li> <li>o Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record</li> <li>o CT, PET or MRI scans</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Code the specific histology when documented.</li> <li>3. Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.</li> </ol> |
| <p><b>H8</b></p> <p>YES</p> <p>NO</p> |        | <p>Code the behavior /3.</p>   |
| <p><b>H9</b></p> <p>YES</p> <p>NO</p> |        | <p><i>Example:</i> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis.</p>  |
|                                       |        |  |

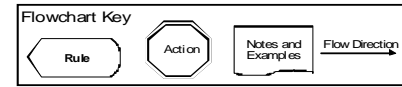


# Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

## MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY



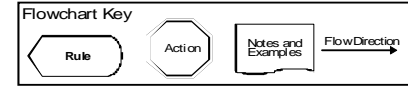
| Rule              | Action | Notes and Examples   |
|-------------------|--------|--|
| <p><b>H10</b></p> |        | <p>1. See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor.</li> <li>○ Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the most invasive tumor.</li> </ul> <p>2. If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule.</p> |
| <p>NO</p>         |        |  |

### Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

#### MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY



| Rule  | Action  | Notes and Examples   |
|---|---|--|
| <p><b>H11</b></p> <p>Are there multiple histologies within the same branch such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology? OR</li> <li>● carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma? OR</li> <li>● squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma? OR</li> <li>● adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma? OR</li> <li>● melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma? OR</li> <li>● sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma?</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;">Yes</p> | <p>Code the most specific histologic term using Chart 1</p> | <p>1. The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050)</p> |
| <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p> <p><b>H12</b></p>   | <p>Code the numerically higher ICD-O-3 histology code.</p>  |  |

This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary. Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.  
 \*\* Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

| Rule  | Site  | Histology | Timing | Behavior | Notes/Examples  | Primary    |
|---|---|-----------|--------|----------|---|------------|
| <b>UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS</b>   |   |           |        |          | Tumor(s) not described as metastasis  |            |
| <b>M1</b>   |   |           |        |          | Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted.<br><i>Example 1:</i> History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary.<br><i>Example 2:</i> Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary. | Single*    |
| <b>SINGLE TUMOR</b>   |   |           |        |          | <i>1.</i> Tumor not described as metastasis<br><i>2.</i> Includes combinations of in situ and invasive  |            |
| <b>M2</b>   | Single  |           |        |          | The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.  | Single*    |
| <b>MULTIPLE TUMORS</b><br>Multiple tumors may be a single primary or multiple primaries |   |           |        |          | <i>1.</i> Tumors not described as metastases<br><i>2.</i> Includes combinations of in situ and invasive   |            |
| <b>M3</b>   | Right side and left side of a paired site             |           |        |          | See Table 1 for list of paired sites  | Multiple** |
| <b>M4</b>   | Upper lip (C000 or C003) and lower lip (C001 or C004) |           |        |          |   | Multiple** |
| <b>M5</b>   | Upper gum (C030) and lower gum (C031)                 |           |        |          |   | Multiple** |
| <b>M6</b>   | Nasal cavity (C300) and middle ear (C301)             |           |        |          |   | Multiple** |

Head and Neck MP

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| <b>Rule</b> | <b>Site</b>  | <b>Histology</b> | <b>Timing</b>                            | <b>Behavior</b>                  | <b>Notes/Examples</b>   | <b>Primary</b> |
|-------------|--|------------------|--|----------------------------------|---|----------------|
| <b>M7</b>   | Topography codes that are different at the second (C <u>x</u> xx) and/or third (Cx <u>x</u> x) character |                  |  |                                  |   | Multiple**     |
| <b>M8</b>   |  |                  | More than 60 days after diagnosis        | An invasive following an in situ | <i>1:</i> The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed.<br><i>2:</i> Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease. | Multiple**     |
| <b>M9</b>   |  |                  | Diagnosed more than five (5) years apart |                                  |   | Multiple**     |

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| <b>Rule</b> | <b>Site</b> | <b>Histology</b>  | <b>Timing</b> | <b>Behavior</b> | <b>Notes/Examples</b> | <b>Primary</b> |
|-------------|-------------|---|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| <b>M10</b>  |             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) <b>and</b> another is a specific histology; or</li> <li>• Carcinoma, NOS (8010) <b>and</b> another is a specific carcinoma; or</li> <li>• Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) <b>and</b> another is a specific adenocarcinoma; or</li> <li>• <b>Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS</b> (8070) and another is <b>specific squamous cell carcinoma</b> or</li> <li>• Melanoma and another is a specific melanoma; or</li> <li>• Sarcoma, NOS (8800) <b>and</b> another is a specific sarcoma</li> </ul> |               |                 |                       | Single*        |
| <b>M11</b>  |             | Different at the first (xxxx), second (xxxx), or third (xxx) number   |               |                 |                       | Multiple**     |

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| <b>Rule</b> | <b>Site</b>                             | <b>Histology</b> | <b>Timing</b> | <b>Behavior</b> | <b>Notes/Examples</b>   | <b>Primary</b> |
|-------------|---|------------------|---------------|-----------------|---|----------------|
| <b>M12</b>  | Does not meet any of the above criteria |                  |               |                 | <p><i>1.</i> When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.</p> <p><i>2.</i> All cases covered by rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histologic code.</p> <p><b>Rule M12 Examples:</b> The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary. <b>Warning:</b> <i>Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors</i></p> <p><b>Example 1:</b> Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth</p> <p><b>Example 2:</b> An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days</p> <p><b>Example 3:</b> In situ following an invasive tumor more than 60 days apart</p> | Single*        |

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| Rule                | Pathology/Cytology Specimen  | Histology | Behavior             | Notes and Examples   | Code                                      |
|---------------------|--|-----------|----------------------|--|---|
| <b>SINGLE TUMOR</b> |  |           |                      |  |   |
| <b>H1</b>           | No pathology/cytology specimen or the pathology/cytology report is not available |           |                      | <p><b>1:</b> Priority for using documents to code the histology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings</li> <li>• Physician’s reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record</li> <li>• CT, PET or MRI scans</li> </ul> <p><b>2:</b> Code the specific histology when documented.</p> <p><b>3:</b> Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented</p> | The histology documented by the physician |
| <b>H2</b>           | None from primary site   |           |                      | Code the behavior /3   | The histology from metastatic site        |
| <b>H3</b>           |  | One type  |                      | <p><b>Example:</b> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis</p>   | The histology                             |
| <b>H4</b>           |  |           | Invasive and in situ | <p><b>Example:</b> The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071).</p>  | The invasive histologic type              |

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**

**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| Rule      | Pathology/Cytology Specimen          | Histology  | Behavior | Notes and Examples  | Code   |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|--|----------|---|--|
| <b>H5</b> |                                      | <p>Multiple histologies all within the same branch on Chart 1.</p> <p>Examples of histologies within same banch:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) <b>and</b> a more specific histology or</li> <li>• Carcinoma, NOS (8010) <b>and</b> a more specific carcinoma or</li> <li>• Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) <b>and</b> a more specific squamous cell carcinoma or</li> <li>• Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) <b>and</b> a more specific adenocarcinoma or</li> <li>• Melanoma, NOS (8720) <b>and</b> a more specific melanoma or</li> <li>• Sarcoma, NOS (8800) <b>and</b> a more specific sarcoma</li> </ul> |          | <p><b>1.</b> The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation.</p> <p><b>2.</b> The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).</p> | The most specific term using Chart 1                   |
| <b>H6</b> | None of the above conditions are met |  |          |   | The histology with the numerically higher ICD-O-3 code |



**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| Rule  | Pathology/Cytology Specimen  | Histology | Behavior | Notes and Examples  | Code                                      |
|---|--|-----------|----------|---|---|
| <b>MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY</b> |  |           |          |   |   |
| <b>H7</b>   | No pathology/cytology specimen or the pathology/cytology report is not available |           |          | <p><b>1:</b> Priority for using documents to code the histology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings</li> <li>• Physician’s reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record</li> <li>• CT, PET or MRI scans</li> </ul> <p><b>2:</b> Code the specific histology when documented</p> <p><b>3:</b> Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented</p> | The histology documented by the physician |
| <b>H8</b>   | None from primary site   |           |          | Code the behavior /3  | The histology from a metastatic site      |
| <b>H9</b>   |  | One type  |          | <p><b>Example:</b> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis</p>  | The histology                             |
| <b>H10</b>  |  |           |          | <p><b>1:</b> See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor</li> <li>• Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the more invasive tumor.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule</p>  | The histology of the most invasive tumor  |

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules – Matrix**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**

**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

| Rule       | Pathology/Cytology Specimen    | Histology  | Behavior | Notes and Examples  | Code   |
|------------|--------------------------------|--|----------|---|--|
| <b>H11</b> |                                | <p>Multiple histologies all within the same branch on Chart 1.<br/>                     Examples of histologies within same banch:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) <b>and</b> a more specific histology or</li> <li>• Carcinoma, NOS (8010) <b>and</b> a more specific carcinoma or</li> <li>• Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) <b>and</b> a more specific squamous cell carcinoma or</li> <li>• Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) <b>and</b> a more specific adenocarcinoma or</li> <li>• Melanoma, NOS (8720) <b>and</b> a more specific melanoma or</li> <li>Sarcoma, NOS (8800) <b>and</b> a more specific sarcoma</li> </ul> |          | <p><b>1.</b> The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation.</p> <p><b>2.</b> The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).</p> | The most specific term using Chart 1                   |
| <b>H12</b> | None of the conditions are met |  |          |   | The histology with the numerically higher ICD-O-3 code |

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules - Text**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS**

*Note:* Tumor(s) not described as metastasis

**Rule M1** When it is not possible to determine if there is a **single tumor or multiple tumors**, opt for a single tumor and abstract as a single primary.\*

*Note:* Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted.

*Example 1:* History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary.

*Example 2:* Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary.

\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.  
This is the end of instructions for Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors.

**SINGLE TUMOR**

*Note 1:* Tumor not described as metastasis

*Note 2:* Includes combinations of in situ and invasive

**Rule M2** A **single tumor** is always a single primary. \*

*Note:* The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.

This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.

\* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

**MULTIPLE TUMORS**

Multiple tumors may be a single primary or multiple primaries.

*Note 1:* Tumors not described as metastases

*Note 2:* Includes combinations of in situ and invasive

**Rule M3** Tumors on the **right side and the left side** of a **paired site** are multiple primaries. \*\*

*Note:* See Table 1 for list of paired sites.

**Rule M4** Tumors on the **upper lip** (C000 or C003) **and the lower lip** (C001 or C004) are multiple primaries. \*\*

**Rule M5** Tumors on the **upper gum** (C030) **and the lower gum** (C031) are multiple primaries. \*\*

**Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules - Text**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

- Rule M6** Tumors in the **nasal cavity** (C300) and the **middle ear** (C301) are multiple primaries. \*\*
- Rule M7** Tumors in sites with ICD-O-3 **topography** codes that are **different** at the second (Cxxx) and/or third (Cxx) character are multiple primaries. \*\*
- Rule M8** An **invasive** tumor **following** an **in situ** tumor more than 60 days after diagnosis is a multiple primary. \*\*  
*Note 1:* The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed.  
*Note 2:* Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease.
- Rule M9** Tumors diagnosed **more than five (5) years** apart are multiple primaries. \*\*
- Rule M10** Abstract as a single primary\* when one tumor is:  
 • **Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS** (8000) and another is a **specific histology** or  
 • **Carcinoma, NOS** (8010) and another is a **specific carcinoma** or  
 • **Adenocarcinoma, NOS** (8140) and another is a **specific adenocarcinoma** or  
 • **Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS** (8070) and another is **specific squamous cell carcinoma** or  
 • **Melanoma, NOS** (8720) and another is a **specific melanoma**  
 • **Sarcoma, NOS** (8800) and another is a **specific sarcoma**
- Rule M11** Tumors with ICD-O-3 **histology** codes that are **different** at the first (xxxx), second (xxxx) or third (xxx) number are multiple primaries. \*\*
- Rule M12** Tumors that **do not meet any** of the above **criteria** are abstracted as a single primary. \*  
*Note 1:* When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.  
*Note 2:* All cases covered by Rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histology code.

**This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors.**

**\* If a single primary, prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.**

**\*\* If multiple primaries, prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.**

**Rule M12 Examples:** The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary. **Warning: Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors.**

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Example 1:</b> Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth | <b>Example 2:</b> An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days | <b>Example 3:</b> In situ following an invasive tumor more than 60 days apart |
|---|--|---|

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules - Text**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**SINGLE TUMOR**

**Rule H1** Code the histology documented by the physician when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen** or the **pathology/cytology** report is **not available**.

*Note 1:* Priority for using documents to code the histology

- Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings
- Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record
- CT, PET, or MRI scans

*Note 2:* Code the specific histology when documented.

*Note 3:* Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.

**Rule H2** Code the histology from a metastatic site when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site**.

*Note:* Code the behavior /3.

**Rule H3** Code the histology when only **one histologic type** is identified.

*Example:* Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.

*Note:* Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.

*Example:* Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis.

**Rule H4** Code the **invasive** histologic type when a single tumor has invasive and in situ components.

*Example:* The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8071).

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules - Text**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**Rule H5** Code the most **specific** histologic term using Chart 1 when there are multiple histologies within the same branch. Examples of histologies within the same branch are:

- Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or
- Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or
- Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous carcinoma or
- Adenocarcinoma, NOS(8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or
- Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or
- Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma

**Note 1:** The specific histology for **in situ** lesions may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with \_\_\_differentiation

**Note 2:** The specific histology for **invasive** lesions may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with \_\_\_differentiation

**Example:** The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).

**Rule H6** Code the histology with the **numerically higher** ICD-O-3 code.

**This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.**

**Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.**

**MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY**

**Rule H7** Code the histology documented by the physician when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen** or the **pathology/cytology** report is **not available**.

**Note 1:** Priority for using documents to code the histology

- Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings
- Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record
- CT, PET, or MRI scans

**Note 2:** Code the specific histology when documented.

**Note 3:** Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS), or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when no specific histology is documented.

**Rule H8** Code the histology from the metastatic site when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site**.

**Note:** Code the behavior /3.

**Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules - Text**  
**C000-C148, C300-C329**  
**(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M-9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

**Rule H9** Code the histology when only **one histologic type** is identified.

*Example:* Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.

*Note:* Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.

*Example:* Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis

**Rule H10** Code the histology of the **most invasive** tumor.

*Note 1:* See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.

- One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor.
- Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the more invasive tumor.

*Note 2:* If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule

**Rule H11** Code the most **specific** histologic term using Chart 1 when there are multiple histologies within the same branch. Examples of histologies within the same branch are:

- Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or
- Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or
- Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous carcinoma or
- Adenocarcinoma, NOS(8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or
- Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or
- Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma

*Note 1:* The specific histology for **in situ** lesions may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with \_\_\_differentiation

*Note 2:* The specific histology for **invasive** lesions may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with \_\_\_differentiation

*Example:* The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).

**Rule H12** Code the histology with the **numerically higher** ICD-O-3 code.

**This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary.**  
**Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.**

---

Head and Neck Histo

This page left blank



CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Upper**

**Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)**

**C00.0, C00.3**

C00.0 External upper lip

C00.3 Mucosa of upper lip

**Note:** AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.3) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Lip, Upper**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Lip, Upper**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to:<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip)<br>Lamina propria<br>Multiple foci<br>Submucosa (superficial invasion)<br>Vermilion surface<br>Superficial extension to:<br>Skin of lip<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Commissure<br>Opposite (both) lip(s)   | *   | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 51   | Gingiva   | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Maxilla   | T4  | RE   | RE     |
| 74   | Upper lip/commissure: Nose  | T4  | RE   | D      |
| 75   | Tongue  | T4  | D    | D      |
| 76   | Skin of face/neck   | T4  | D    | D      |
| 77   | Cortical bone (other than code 70)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Inferior alveolar nerve           | T4  | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4  | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

#### Lip, Upper

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Lip, Upper

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Other groups:<br>Facial:<br>Buccinator (buccal)<br>Nasolabial<br>Parotid<br>Infra-auricular<br>Intraparotid<br>Periparotid<br>Preauricular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 18   | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1    | RN   | RN     |
| 19   | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a   | RN   | RN     |
| 20   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 21   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 22   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *     | D    | D      |
| 29   | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b   | RN   | RN     |
| 30   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 31   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | RN     |
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 41   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 51   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Upper**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Upper**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Upper**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Upper**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Lip, Upper**  
**CS Mets Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Upper**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description                |
|------|----------------------------|
| 000  | No involved regional nodes |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Lower**

**Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)**

**C00.1, C00.4, C00.6**

C00.1 External lower lip

C00.4 Mucosa of lower lip

C00.6 Commissure of lip

**Note:** AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.4) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Lip, Lower**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Lip, Lower**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to:<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip)<br>Lamina propria<br>Multiple foci<br>Submucosa (superficial invasion)<br>Vermilion surface<br>Superficial extension to:<br>Skin of lip<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 50          | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Commissure<br>Opposite (both) lip(s)                       | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 51          | Gingiva   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 70          | Mandible  | T4         | RE          | RE            |
| 74          | Nose  | T4         | RE          | D             |
| 75          | Tongue  | T4         | D           | D             |
| 76          | Skin of face/neck   | T4         | D           | D             |
| 77          | Cortical bone (other than code 70)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Inferior alveolar nerve           | T4         | D           | D             |
| 80          | Further contiguous extension  | T4         | D           | D             |
| 95          | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0         | U           | U             |
| 99          | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX         | U           | U             |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Lip, Lower**

**CS TS/Ext-Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower**

**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>                       | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00          | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0         | NONE        | NONE          |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Other groups<br>Facial: Mandibular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid-jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Lip, Lower**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Lower**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Lip, Lower**  
**CS Mets Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Lip, Lower**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes                             |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger                              |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"                           |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 992  | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993  | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Lower****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Lip, Lower****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Lower****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |



## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Lower****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Lip, Lower****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Other Lip**

**Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)**

**C00.2, C00.5, C00.8-C00.9**

C00.2 External lip, NOS

C00.5 Mucosa of lip, NOS

C00.8 Overlapping lesion of lip

C00.9 Lip, NOS (excludes skin of lip C44.0)

**Note:** AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.5) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Other Lip**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Other Lip**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to:<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip)<br>Lamina propria<br>Multiple foci<br>Submucosa (superficial invasion)<br>Vermilion surface<br>Superficial extension to:<br>Skin of lip<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Commissure<br>Opposite (both) lip(s)                       | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 51   | Gingiva   | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 75   | Tongue  | T4  | D    | D      |
| 76   | Skin of face/neck   | T4  | D    | D      |
| 77   | Cortical bone<br>Floor of mouth<br>Inferior alveolar nerve                                | T4  | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4  | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

#### Other Lip

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other Lip

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node:<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Other groups:<br>Facial:<br>Buccinator (buccal)<br>Mandibular<br>Nasolabial<br>Parotid:<br>Infra-auricular<br>Intraparotid<br>Periparotid<br>Preauricular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 18   | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1    | RN   | RN     |
| 19   | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a   | RN   | RN     |
| 20   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 21   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 22   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *     | D    | D      |
| 29   | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b   | RN   | RN     |
| 30   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 31   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | RN     |
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 41   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 51   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

## CS Staging Schemas

**Other Lip**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other Lip**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other Lip**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other Lip**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Other Lip**  
**CS Mets Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other Lip**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description                |
|------|----------------------------|
| 000  | No involved regional nodes |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

### Other Lip

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |



## CS Staging Schemas

**Other Lip****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Lip****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Lip****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Lip****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**

**C01.9, C02.4**

C01.9 Base of tongue, NOS

C02.4 Lingual tonsil

**Note:** AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C10.\_).

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor on one side confined to posterior 1/3 of tongue:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa                    | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature, intrinsic or NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS<br>Midline tumor   | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Tumor crosses midline   | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Anterior 2/3 of tongue for base of tongue<br>Base of tongue for lingual tonsil<br>Floor of mouth<br>Lower gingiva | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 53   | Sublingual gland  | *   | RE   | RE     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 60          | Epiglottis, lingual (pharyngeal) surface<br>Glossoepiglottic fold<br>Glossopharyngeal fold<br>Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Pharyngoepiglottic fold<br>Tonsillar pillars and fossae<br>Tonsils<br>Vallecula | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 62          | Soft palate, inferior surface or NOS   | *          | D           | RE            |
| 71          | Mandible for lingual tonsil  | T4a        | RE          | D             |
| 72          | Mandible for base of tongue  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 74          | Medial pterygoid<br>Hard palate  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 75          | Musculature, extrinsic:<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 77          | Larynx   | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 78          | Skin   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 80          | Contiguous extension to:<br>Base of skull<br>Carotid artery<br>Hypopharynx<br>Lateral nasopharynx<br>Lateral pterygoid muscle<br>Pterygoid plates<br>Uvula   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 82          | Further contiguous extension   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 95          | No evidence of primary tumor   | T0         | U           | U             |
| 99          | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | TX         | U           | U             |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, 60, and 62 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**

**CS TS/Ext-Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement   | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Sublingual<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS | *   | RN   | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS                                     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases                                     | M1  | D    | D      |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

#### Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

#### CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved              |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved             |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved          |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**C02.0-C02.3, C02.8-C02.9**

C02.0 Dorsal surface of tongue, NOS

C02.1 Border of tongue

C02.2 Ventral surface of tongue, NOS

C02.3 Anterior 2/3 of tongue, NOS

C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue

C02.9 Tongue, NOS

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes</b>   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b> |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial                                    | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor on one side confined to:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa   | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature, intrinsic or NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS<br>Midline tumor  | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Tumor crosses midline  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Base of tongue<br>Floor of mouth<br>Gingiva, lower<br>Retromolar trigone | *   | RE   | RE     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 53   | Sublingual gland  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Soft palate, inferior surface<br>Tonsillar pillars and fossae<br>Tonsils               | *   | D    | RE     |
| 70   | Mandible  | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 72   | (60) + (70)   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 74   | Maxilla<br>Maxillary sinus  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 75   | Musculature, extrinsic:<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus | T4a | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record                         | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS TS/Ext-Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Sublingual<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that<br>define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12  | *          | D           | D             |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**Reg LN Pos**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**

**Reg LN Exam**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**



## CS Staging Schemas

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/15/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s), including:<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph nodes, NOS                               | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)  | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm" |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm" |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Gum, Upper

## C03.0

## C03.0 Upper gum

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

## Gum, Upper

## CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

## Gum, Upper

## CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note:** Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)                       | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip<br>Tongue | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 55   | Facial muscle, NOS<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of face                                    | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)                           | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Maxilla   | T4a | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 72   | Deep muscle of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Hyoglossus<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus   | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 74   | Maxillary antrum (sinus)<br>Nasal cavity  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 76   | Skin  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 79   | Skull   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension, including:<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates<br>Skull base<br>Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record   | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

### Gum, Upper

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Gum, Upper

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement   | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Retropharyngeal, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS | *   | RN   | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Gum, Upper**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Upper**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Upper**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, Upper**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS                                     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases                                     | M1  | D    | D      |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

#### Gum, Upper

#### CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Gum, Upper

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Gum, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. **Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved              |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved             |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved          |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Upper****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**Retromolar gingiva (trigone)**

**C03.1, C06.2**

C03.1 Lower gum

C06.2 Retromolar area

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note:** Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)                       | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip<br>Tongue | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 55   | Facial muscle, NOS<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of face                                    | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)                           | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 65   | Soft palate including uvula   | *   | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 70   | Mandible  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 72   | Deep muscle of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Hyoglossus<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus   | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 76   | Skin  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 79   | Skull   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension, including:<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates<br>Skull base<br>Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record   | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

### Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Other groups<br>Facial:<br>Buccinator (buccal)<br>Nasolabial<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that<br>define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |



**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**

**Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

## CS Staging Schemas

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm" |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm" |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. **Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, NOS

C03.9

C03.9 Gum, NOS

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

Gum, NOS

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note:** Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)                   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip                         | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 55   | Facial muscle, NOS<br>Subcutaneous soft tissue of face                                | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)                       | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 72   | Deep muscle of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Hyoglossus<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus | T4a | RE   | RE     |

CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 76   | Skin  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 79   | Skull   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension, including:<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates<br>Skull base<br>Encases internal carotid artery | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record   | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Gum, NOS**

**CS TS/Ext-Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, NOS**

**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 09/17/2007)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancer, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |



**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Other groups<br>Facial:<br>Buccinator (buccal)<br>Nasolabial<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Gum, NOS**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, NOS**

**Reg LN Pos**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Gum, NOS**

**Reg LN Exam**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Gum, NOS****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Gum, NOS****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Gum, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm" |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm" |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. **Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Gum, NOS****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

### Gum, NOS

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Gum, NOS

**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Gum, NOS

**CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Floor of Mouth**

**C04.0-C04.1, C04.8-C04.9**

- C04.0 Anterior floor of mouth
- C04.1 Lateral floor of mouth
- C04.8 Overlapping lesion of floor of mouth
- C04.9 Floor of mouth, NOS

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>CS Tumor Size<br/>                 CS Extension<br/>                 CS TS/Ext-Eval<br/>                 CS Lymph Nodes<br/>                 CS Reg Nodes Eval<br/>                 Reg LN Pos<br/>                 Reg LN Exam<br/>                 CS Mets at DX<br/>                 CS Mets Eval</p> | <p><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1</b> - Size of Lymph Nodes<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2</b> - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3</b> - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4</b> - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5</b> - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6</b> - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p><b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br/>                 Histology Exclusion Table<br/>                 AJCC Stage<br/>                 Extension Size Table<br/>                 Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|---|

**Floor of Mouth**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Floor of Mouth**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor on one side confined to:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa                    | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Tumor crosses midline   | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Anterior 2/3 of tongue<br>Base of tongue<br>Gingiva (alveolar ridge), lower               | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 53   | Sublingual gland, including ducts<br>Submandibular (submaxillary) glands, including ducts | *   | RE   | RE     |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 60   | Epiglottis<br>Glossoepiglottic fold<br>Glossopharyngeal sulcus<br>Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Pharyngeal (lingual) surface<br>Pharyngoepiglottic fold<br>Tonsillar pillars and fossae<br>Tonsils<br>Vallecula | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 62   | Extension to deep extrinsic muscle of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus  | T4a | L    | L      |
| 63   | (62) + any of (50, 53, or 60)  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 64   | Subcutaneous soft tissue of chin/neck  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Mandible   | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 76   | Skin of undersurface of chin/neck  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 77   | Further contiguous extension:<br>Maxillary sinus   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension:<br>Base of skull<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor   | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | TX  | U    | U      |

**\*Note:** For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

### Floor of Mouth

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Floor of Mouth

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement   | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Sublingual<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *   | RN   | RN     |
| 12   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *   | D    | D      |
| 18   | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1  | RN   | RN     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 19   | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a   | RN   | RN     |
| 20   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 22   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *     | D    | D      |
| 29   | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b   | RN   | RN     |
| 30   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

#### **Floor of Mouth**

#### **CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

#### **Floor of Mouth**

#### **Reg LN Pos**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Floor of Mouth****Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Floor of Mouth****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Floor of Mouth****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck**

(Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Floor of Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |



CS Staging Schemas

Hard Palate

C05.0

C05.0 Hard palate

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes</b>   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b> |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

Hard Palate

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor on one side confined to mucoperiosteum (stroma)  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Tumor crosses midline   | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Gingiva, upper<br>Glossopalatine arch<br>Pharyngopalatine arch<br>Soft palate<br>Uvula | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Maxillary bone<br>Palatine bone   | T4a | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 74   | Deep muscle of tongue<br>Floor of nose<br>Maxillary antrum (sinus)<br>Nasal cavity<br>Nasopharynx<br>Skin of face<br>Sphenoid bone | T4a | D    | D      |
| 76   | Pterygoid plate  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor   | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 30, 40, and 50 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

#### Hard Palate

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Hard Palate

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Regional lymph node, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submental  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Hard Palate**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Hard Palate****Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Hard Palate****Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Hard Palate****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Hard Palate****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes                             |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger                              |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 991  | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992  | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993  | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Hard Palate****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

Soft Palate, Uvula

C05.1-C05.2

C05.1 Soft Palate, NOS

C05.2 Uvula

**Note 1:** AJCC includes inferior surface of the soft palate (C05.1) and uvula (C05.2) with oropharynx (C09.\_, C10.\_).

**Note 2:** Soft palate excludes nasopharyngeal (superior) surface of soft palate (C11.3).

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial                                  | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor on one side confined to:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature invaded  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Tumor crosses midline  | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Gum (gingiva), upper                    | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Tonsillar pillars and fossae<br>Tonsils     | *   | RE   | RE     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 65   | Hard palate  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Mandible<br>Maxilla<br>Palatine bone (bone of hard palate)   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 71   | Pterygoid muscle, medial or NOS  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 72   | Tongue<br>Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 73   | Larynx   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 74   | Maxillary antrum (sinus)<br>Nasopharynx, lateral or NOS  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 77   | Nasal cavity   | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 78   | Pterygoid muscle, lateral<br>Pterygoid plates<br>Note: For medial pterygoid muscle or pterygoid muscle, NOS, see code 71 | T4b | RE   | D      |
| 79   | 77 or 78 with any of 70 to 76  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension<br>Carotid artery<br>Skull base   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor   | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record                                | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 40, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Soft Palate, Uvula****CS TS/Ext-Eval****SEE STANDARD TABLE****Soft Palate, Uvula****CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00          | None; no regional lymph node involvement   | N0         | NONE        | NONE          |
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Other groups<br>Retropharyngeal  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels<br>that define upper, middle, and lower jugular<br>nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

## CS Staging Schemas

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**CS Mets Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Soft Palate, Uvula**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code | Description                |
|------|----------------------------|
| 000  | No involved regional nodes |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Soft Palate, Uvula

## CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. **Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Soft Palate, Uvula

**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Soft Palate, Uvula

**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |



## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Soft Palate, Uvula****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Soft Palate, Uvula****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Other Mouth**

**C05.8-C05.9, C06.8-C06.9**

C05.8 Overlapping lesion of palate

C05.9 Palate, NOS

C06.8 Overlapping lesion of other and unspecified parts of mouth

C06.9 Mouth, NOS

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Other Mouth**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Other Mouth**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial  | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa   | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature invaded  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Adjacent oral cavity   | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Extension to oropharynx:<br>Inferior surface of soft palate<br>Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Lingual surface of epiglottis<br>Vallecula | *   | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 70   | Extension to adjacent structures:<br>Mandible<br>Maxilla<br>Maxillary antrum (sinus)<br>Nasal cavity<br>Skin of face/neck<br>Tongue | T4a | D    | D      |
| 71   | Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 72   | Skull   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 75   | Base of skull<br>Encases internal carotid artery<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record   | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

#### Other Mouth

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other Mouth

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that<br>define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12  | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information  | N2b        | RN          | RN            |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 30   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

#### Other Mouth

##### CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other Mouth

##### Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other Mouth

##### Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

## CS Staging Schemas

**Other Mouth****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Other Mouth****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm" |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm" |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |



## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other Mouth****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule**

**C06.0-C06.1**

C06.0 Cheek mucosa

C06.1 Vestibule of mouth

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes</b>   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b>  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</b> |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial                              | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to:<br>Lamina propria<br>Submucosa         | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Musculature (buccinator)   | *   | RE   | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 50   | Lip(s) including commissure  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 51   | Gingiva  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Lateral pharyngeal wall<br>Tonsillar pillars and fossae<br>Tonsils | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 65   | Subcutaneous soft tissue of cheek                                  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 66   | Skin of cheek (WITH or WITHOUT ulceration)                         | T4a | RE   | D      |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 67   | Maxillary sinus   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 70   | Bone (cortical):<br>Mandible<br>Maxilla   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 73   | Skull   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 75   | Tongue<br>Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue   | T4a | D    | D      |
| 79   | Other contiguous extension:<br>Base of skull<br>Encases internal carotid artery<br>Masticator space<br>Pterygoid plates | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension:<br>Hard palate<br>Soft palate   | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record                               | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, 51, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

### Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Other groups<br>Facial:<br>Buccinator (buccal)<br>Nasolabial<br>Parotid, NOS<br>Infra-auricular<br>Preauricular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels<br>that define upper, middle, and lower jugular<br>nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12  | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information  | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple or regional   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple   | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes  | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information  | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS  | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information   | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record   | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule**

**Reg LN Pos**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |



## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. **Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Surgery Codes

## Oral Cavity

**Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,  
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, Palate C050–C059,  
Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069**  
(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

## Codes

- 00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY
- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
  - 13 Cryosurgery
  - 14 Laser

**No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14**

- 20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
  - 27 Excisional biopsy

**Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH**

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- [**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]
- 25 Laser excision

**Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27**

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

- 30 Wide excision, NOS
- Code 30 includes:
- Hemiglossectomy
  - Partial glossectomy
- 40 Radical excision of tumor, NOS
- 41 Radical excision of tumor ONLY
  - 42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)
  - 43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

**Codes 40–43 include:**

- Total glossectomy
- Radical glossectomy

- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

**Parotid, Other and Unspecified Glands  
C079, C080-C089**

**Note: For Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: see Head and Neck (pg C-3)**

CS Staging Schemas

**Parotid Gland**

**C07.9**

C07.9 Parotid gland

**Note:** Laterality must be coded for C07.9.

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>CS Tumor Size<br/>                 CS Extension<br/>                 CS TS/Ext-Eval<br/>                 CS Lymph Nodes<br/>                 CS Reg Nodes Eval<br/>                 Reg LN Pos<br/>                 Reg LN Exam<br/>                 CS Mets at DX<br/>                 CS Mets Eval</p> | <p><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1</b> - Size of Lymph Nodes<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2</b> - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3</b> - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4</b> - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5</b> - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6</b> - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p><b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br/>                 Histology Exclusion Table<br/>                 AJCC Stage<br/>                 Extension Size Table<br/>                 Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|---|

**Parotid Gland**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin<br>Multiple foci confined to substance of parotid gland  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 35   | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 40   | Another major salivary gland (submaxillary, sublingual)<br>Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension<br>Pharyngeal mucosa<br>Skeletal muscle:<br>Digastric<br>Masseter<br>Pterygoid<br>Sternocleidomastoid<br>Stylohyoid | T3  | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 42   | External auditory meatus<br>Skin overlying gland  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 45   | Periosteum of mandible  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 50   | Auricular nerve<br>Mandible<br>Mastoid  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 70   | Facial (7th) nerve  | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 72   | Spinal accessory nerve  | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 75   | Major blood vessel(s):<br>Carotid artery<br>Facial artery or vein<br>Jugular vein<br>Maxillary artery | T4b | RE   | RE     |
| 76   | Base of skull<br>Skull, NOS   | T4b | RE   | D      |
| 77   | Pterygoid plates  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record             | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension by Size Table for this site.

### Parotid Gland

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Parotid Gland

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 09/17/2007)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |



**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Parotid nodes<br>Infra-auricular<br>Intraparotid<br>Periparotid<br>Preauricular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep Cervical, NOS<br>Facial<br>Internal jugular<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 11          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 21   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 22   | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *     | D    | D      |
| 29   | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b   | RN   | RN     |
| 30   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 31   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | RN     |
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 41   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 51   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size table, for this site.

#### **Parotid Gland**

#### **CS Reg Nodes Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Parotid Gland****Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland****Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 02/22/2005)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)  | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Parotid Gland****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Parotid Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes                             |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger                              |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"                           |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 992  | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993  | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

### Parotid Gland

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Parotid Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Parotid Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Parotid Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Parotid Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Submandibular Gland**

**C08.0**

C08.0 Submandibular gland

**Note:** Laterality must be coded for C08.0.

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>CS Tumor Size<br/>                 CS Extension<br/>                 CS TS/Ext-Eval<br/>                 CS Lymph Nodes<br/>                 CS Reg Nodes Eval<br/>                 Reg LN Pos<br/>                 Reg LN Exam<br/>                 CS Mets at DX<br/>                 CS Mets Eval</p> | <p><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br/> <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p> | <p><b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br/>                 Histology Exclusion Table<br/>                 AJCC Stage<br/>                 Extension Size Table<br/>                 Lymph Nodes Size Table</p> |
|---|---|---|

**Submandibular Gland**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Submandibular Gland**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial  | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin   | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | *   | L    | L      |
| 35   | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY   | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 40   | Another major salivary gland (parotid, sublingual)<br>Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension<br>Skeletal muscle:<br>Digastric<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Pterygoid<br>Styloglossus<br>Stylohyoid | T3  | RE   | RE     |



## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 45   | Periosteum of mandible  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 50   | Mandible<br>Nerves:<br>Facial (7th)<br>Lingual  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 51   | External auditory meatus  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 52   | Major blood vessels:<br>Carotid artery<br>Facial artery or vein<br>Maxillary artery       | T4b | RE   | RE     |
| 71   | Base of skull<br>Skull, NOS   | T4b | RE   | D      |
| 72   | Spinal accessory nerve  | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 77   | Pterygoid plates  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

**Submandibular Gland**  
**CS TS/Ext-Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland**

**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 09/17/2007)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels<br>that define upper, middle, and lower jugular<br>nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information   | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information  | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12  | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information  | N2b        | RN          | RN            |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Submandibular Gland**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Submandibular Gland**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

## CS Staging Schemas

**Submandibular Gland****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 02/22/2005)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in the CS Lymph Nodes table because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)  | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Submandibular Gland****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description   |
|---------|---|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes  |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)                        |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger   |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given                      |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"  |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm" |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm" |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm" |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm" |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm" |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Submandibular Gland****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved                                      |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved   |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                     |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved  |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |



CS Staging Schemas

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

C08.1, C08.8-C08.9

C08.1 Sublingual gland

C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands

C08.9 Major salivary gland, NOS

**Note:** Laterality must be coded for C08.1.

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Extension (Revised: 08/14/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 35   | Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 40   | Extension to:<br>Another major salivary gland (parotid, submandibular)<br>Periglandular soft/connective tissue including<br>extraparenchymal extension<br>Skeletal muscle:<br>Digastric<br>Pterygoid<br>Stylohyoid | T3  | RE   | RE     |
| 45   | Periosteum of mandible   | T4a | RE   | RE     |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 51   | Mandible<br>Nerves:<br>Facial (7th)<br>Lingual  | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Skin  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 62   | External auditory meatus  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 65   | Blood vessel(s):<br>Carotid artery<br>Facial artery or vein<br>Maxillary artery           | T4b | RE   | RE     |
| 71   | Base of skull<br>Skull, NOS   | T4b | RE   | D      |
| 72   | Spinal accessory nerve  | T4a | RE   | D      |
| 79   | Pterygoid plates  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

#### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

#### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description                              | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement | N0  | NONE | NONE   |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Regional lymph node, NOS   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that<br>define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 32   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *     | D    | D      |
| 40   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 42   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *     | D    | D      |
| 49   | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c   | RN   | RN     |
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

#### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

##### CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

##### Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

##### Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

##### CS Mets at DX (Revised: 02/22/2005)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00          | No; none   | M0         | NONE        | NONE          |
| 10          | Distant lymph node(s)  | M1         | D           | D             |
| 40          | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1         | D           | D             |
| 50          | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1         | D           | D             |
| 99          | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX         | U           | U             |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**

**CS Mets Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**

**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-------------|--|
| 000         | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988     | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989         | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990         | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991         | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992         | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993         | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994         | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995         | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996         | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997         | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999         | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved              |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved             |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved          |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |



Surgery Codes

**Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands**

**Parotid Gland C079, Major Salivary Glands C080–C089**

(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

**Codes**

- 00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY
- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
  - 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
  - 13 Cryosurgery
  - 14 Laser

**No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14**

- 20 Local tumor excision, NOS
  - 26 Polypectomy
  - 27 Excisional biopsy

**Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH**

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]

- 25 Laser excision

**Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27**

[**SEER Note:** Codes 30-80 include major salivary gland, NOS]

- 30 Less than total parotidectomy, NOS; less than total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
  - 31 Facial nerve spared
  - 32 Facial nerve sacrificed
- 33 Superficial lobe ONLY
  - 34 Facial nerve spared
  - 35 Facial nerve sacrificed
- 36 Deep lobe (Total)
  - [**SEER Note:** With or without superficial lobe]
  - 37 Facial nerve spared
  - 38 Facial nerve sacrificed

[**SEER Note:** Codes 40-80 include submandibulectomy; submaxillectomy]

- 40 Total parotidectomy, NOS; total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
  - 41 Facial nerve spared
  - 42 Facial nerve sacrificed
- 50 Radical parotidectomy, NOS; radical removal of major salivary gland, NOS
  - 51 WITHOUT removal of temporal bone
  - 52 WITH removal of temporal bone
  - 53 WITH removal of overlying skin (requires graft or flap coverage)

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### Surgery Codes

- 80 Parotidectomy, NOS
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**Pharynx, Tonsil, Oropharynx, Hypopharynx, Pyriform Sinus  
C090-C148**

**Note: For Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: see Head and Neck (pg C-3)**

CS Staging Schemas

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**

**C09.0-C09.1, C09.8-C09.9, C10.0, C10.2-C10.4, C10.8-C10.9**

- C09.0 Tonsillar fossa
- C09.1 Tonsillar pillar
- C09.8 Overlapping lesion of tonsil
- C09.9 Tonsil, NOS (excludes lingual tonsil C02.4)
- C10.0 Vallecula
- C10.2 Lateral wall of oropharynx
- C10.3 Posterior wall of oropharynx
- C10.4 Branchial cleft (site of neoplasm)
- C10.8 Overlapping lesion of oropharynx
- C10.9 Oropharynx, NOS

**Note 1:** Laterality must be coded for C09.0, C09.1, C09.8, and C09.9.

**Note 2:** AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C09.\_, C10.\_).

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size<br>CS Extension<br>CS TS/Ext-Eval<br>CS Lymph Nodes<br>CS Reg Nodes Eval<br>Reg LN Pos<br>Reg LN Exam<br>CS Mets at DX<br>CS Mets Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1</b> - Size of Lymph Nodes<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2</b> - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3</b> - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4</b> - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5</b> - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6</b> - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Extension Size Table<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|--|

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 08/15/2006)

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites:<br>Anterior wall (including vallecula and lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis)<br>One lateral wall<br>Posterior wall | *   | L    | L      |
| 20   | Involvement of two or more subsites:<br>Posterior, anterior or lateral wall(s)  | *   | L    | L      |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 30          | Localized, NOS   | *          | L           | L             |
| 40          | Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 41          | Hypopharynx NOS<br>Pyramidal sinus   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 42          | Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 50          | Base of tongue<br>Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Gum (gingiva)   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 55          | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 60          | Prevertebral fascia or muscle<br>Soft tissue of neck   | *          | RE          | RE            |
| 62          | Nasopharynx, lateral, or NOS   | T4b        | RE          | RE            |
| 65          | Larynx, NOS<br>Medial pterygoid muscle, or pterygoid muscle, NOS<br>Posterior surface of epiglottis  | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 70          | Deep extrinsic muscles of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus<br>Hard palate<br>Mandible | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 72          | Lateral pterygoid muscle<br>Pterygoid plates   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 75          | Bone of skull  | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 76          | Bone   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 77          | Carotid artery   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 80          | Further contiguous extension:<br>Anterior 2/3 of tongue<br>Parotid gland   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 95          | No evidence of primary tumor   | T0         | U           | U             |
| 99          | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | TX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10, 20, 40, 41, 42, 50, 55, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

## CS Staging Schemas

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS TS/Ext-Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement  | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS | *   | RN   | RN     |
| 11   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental   | *   | D    | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM   | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-------|------|--------|
| 50   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 51   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | RN     |
| 52   | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *     | D    | D      |
| 60   | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS | RN   | RN     |
| 70   | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3    | RN   | RN     |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *     | RN   | RN     |
| 99   | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX    | U    | U      |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Tonsil, Oropharynx**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|-------------|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none    | M0  | NONE | NONE   |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

### Tonsil, Oropharynx

#### CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

### Tonsil, Oropharynx

#### CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description                                       |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved                    |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved                   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved                  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved               |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved              |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved             |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved          |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Tonsil, Oropharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

## C10.1

C10.1 Anterior surface of epiglottis

**Note:** AJCC includes lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis (C10.1) with larynx. SEER Extent of Disease included it with oropharynx.

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

## Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

## CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

## Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

## CS Extension (Revised: 05/07/2004)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial  | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to anterior surface of epiglottis with normal vocal cord mobility                            | T1  | L    | L      |
| 20   | Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of oropharynx  | T2  | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | T1  | L    | L      |
| 31   | Vallecula without fixation of larynx   | T2  | L    | L      |
| 32   | Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of supraglottis (including posterior surface of epiglottis) without fixation of larynx | T2  | RE   | RE     |
| 33   | Larynx, glottic or NOS, without fixation of larynx   | T2  | RE   | RE     |
| 34   | Pyramidal sinus, medial wall or NOS, without fixation of larynx  | T2  | RE   | RE     |
| 35   | Mucosa of base of tongue without fixation of larynx  | T2  | RE   | RE     |
| 36   | Any of (10) to (35) with vocal cord fixation   | T3  | RE   | RE     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 37          | Paraglottic space<br>Pre-epiglottic tissues  | T3         | RE          | RE            |
| 38          | Minor thyroid cartilage erosion (inner cortex) (see also code 67)  | T3         | D           | D             |
| 39          | Hypopharynx, NOS<br>Postericoid area<br>Pyriform sinus except medial wall (see code 34)  | T3         | RE          | RE            |
| 43          | (38) + (39)  | T3         | D           | D             |
| 45          | Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS   | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 47          | Nasopharynx, NOS<br>Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface   | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 50          | Base of tongue, except mucosa (see code 35)<br>Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)<br>Floor of mouth<br>Gum (gingiva)  | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 62          | Soft tissues of neck   | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 65          | Pterygoid muscle   | T4a        | RE          | RE            |
| 66          | [(38) or (43)] + any of [(45) to (65)]   | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 67          | Invasion through thyroid cartilage (see also code 38)<br>Thyroid cartilage, NOS  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 68          | Trachea  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 69          | Esophagus<br>Strap muscles<br>Thyroid  | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 70          | Extrinsic muscles of tongue:<br>Genioglossus<br>Geniohyoid<br>Hyoglossus<br>Mylohyoid<br>Palatoglossus<br>Styloglossus   | T4a        | D           | D             |
| 75          | Prevertebral fascia or muscle<br>Prevertebral space  | T4b        | RE          | RE            |
| 77          | (75) + any of [(66) to (70)]   | T4b        | D           | D             |
| 80          | Further contiguous extension, including:<br>Anterior 2/3 of tongue<br>Bone<br>Encases carotid artery<br>Hard palate<br>Mandible<br>Mediastinal structures<br>Parotid gland | T4b        | D           | D             |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

#### Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

##### CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

##### CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement   | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS | *   | RN   | RN     |
| 11   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental  | *   | D    | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 12          | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *          | D           | D             |
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |



**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**

**Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**

**Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**

**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 02/05/2007)

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00          | No; none   | M0         | NONE        | NONE          |
| 10          | Distant lymph node(s), including mediastinal   | M1         | D           | D             |
| 40          | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis | M1         | D           | D             |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>(Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases)                                       | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

#### Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

##### CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

#### Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

##### CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

#### Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

##### CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**CS Staging Schemas**

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 000         | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001         | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005         | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888         | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**

**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 000         | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100         | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010         | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101         | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011         | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111         | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved        |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved                         |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Anterior Surface of Epiglottis****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Nasopharynx**

**C11.0-C11.3, C11.8-C11.9**

- C11.0 Superior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.1 Posterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.2 Lateral wall of nasopharynx
- C11.3 Anterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.8 Overlapping lesion of nasopharynx
- C11.9 Nasopharynx, NOS

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size<br>CS Extension<br>CS TS/Ext-Eval<br>CS Lymph Nodes<br>CS Reg Nodes Eval<br>Reg LN Pos<br>Reg LN Exam<br>CS Mets at DX<br>CS Mets Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1</b> - Size of Lymph Nodes<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2</b> - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3</b> - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4</b> - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5</b> - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck<br><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6</b> - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage<br>Lymph Nodes Size Table |
|--|--|--|

**Nasopharynx**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Nasopharynx**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 03/17/2004)

**Note:** Parapharyngeal involvement denotes postero-lateral infiltration of tumor beyond the pharyngobasilar fascia. Involvement of the masticator space denotes extension of tumor beyond the anterior surface of the lateral pterygoid muscle, or lateral extension beyond the postero-lateral wall of the maxillary antrum, pterygo-maxillary fissure.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites:<br>Inferior wall (superior surface of soft palate)<br>One lateral wall<br>Posterior superior wall (vault) | T1  | L    | L      |
| 20   | Involvement of two or more subsites:<br>Lateral wall extending into eustachian tube/middle ear<br>Posterior, inferior, or lateral wall(s)                           | T1  | L    | L      |
| 30   | Confined to nasopharynx<br>Localized, NOS   | T1  | L    | L      |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 40          | Oropharynx<br>Soft palate, inferior surface   | T2a        | RE          | RE            |
| 50          | Nasal cavity  | T2a        | RE          | RE            |
| 55          | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation or tumor<br>Described only as FIXED                        | T4         | RE          | RE            |
| 56          | Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH parapharyngeal extension  | T2b        | RE          | RE            |
| 57          | Hard palate   | T4         | D           | RE            |
| 58          | Pterygopalatine fossa   | T4         | RE          | RE            |
| 60          | Bone, including skull   | T3         | RE          | RE            |
| 62          | Paranasal sinus   | T3         | D           | RE            |
| 65          | Orbit   | T4         | RE          | D             |
| 70          | Brain<br>Cranial nerves<br>Hypopharynx<br>Infratemporal fossa<br>Orbit<br>Intracranial extension, NOS | T4         | D           | D             |
| 75          | Masticator space  | T4         | D           | D             |
| 80          | Further contiguous extension<br>Soft tissues of the neck  | T4         | D           | D             |
| 95          | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0         | U           | U             |
| 99          | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record             | TX         | U           | U             |

**Nasopharynx**

**CS TS/Ext-Eval**

**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx**

**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement  | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS  | *   | RN   | RN     |
| 11   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental   | *   | D    | RN     |
| 12   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels<br>that define upper, middle, and lower jugular<br>nodes)<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital<br>Supraclavicular fossa | *   | D    | D      |



**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 18          | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1         | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple                 | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple                 | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple                 | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, no other information  | N2         | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, NOS   | N3NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 75          | Regional lymph nodes in the supraclavicular fossa:<br>Inferior deep cervical (scalene)<br>Spinal accessory (posterior cervical)<br>Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) (See Note 4) | N3b        | D           | D             |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table, for this site.

CS Staging Schemas

**Nasopharynx**  
**CS Reg Nodes Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx**  
**Reg LN Pos**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx**  
**Reg LN Exam**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx**  
**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/15/2006)

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph nodes, NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Nasopharynx**  
**CS Mets Eval**  
**SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Nasopharynx**  
**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes                             |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger                              |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 991  | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992  | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993  | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Nasopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Nasopharynx

**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Nasopharynx

**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Nasopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Nasopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**

**C12.9, C13.0-C13.2, C13.8-C13.9**

- C12.9 Pyriform sinus
- C13.0 Postcricoid region
- C13.1 Hypopharyngeal aspect of aryepiglottic fold
- C13.2 Posterior wall of hypopharynx
- C13.8 Overlapping lesion of hypopharynx
- C13.9 Hypopharynx, NOS

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CS Tumor Size</li> <li>CS Extension</li> <li>CS TS/Ext-Eval</li> <li>CS Lymph Nodes</li> <li>CS Reg Nodes Eval</li> <li>Reg LN Pos</li> <li>Reg LN Exam</li> <li>CS Mets at DX</li> <li>CS Mets Eval</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1</b> - Size of Lymph Nodes</li> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2</b> - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</li> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3</b> - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</li> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4</b> - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</li> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5</b> - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</li> <li><b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6</b> - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</li> </ul> | <p><b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Histology Exclusion Table</li> <li>AJCC Stage</li> <li>Lymph Nodes Size Table</li> <li>Specific Extension with Size</li> </ul> |
|--|--|--|

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**

**CS Tumor Size**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**

**CS Extension** (Revised: 09/25/2007)

**Note:** If there is fixation of hemilarynx or larynx, code to 55, not 15 or 45.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial  | Tis | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites:<br>Laryngopharynx<br>Postcricoid area<br>Posterior pharyngeal wall<br>Pyriform sinus | *   | L    | L      |
| 15   | Code 10 with tumor fixation  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 20   | Tumor invades more than one subsite of hypopharynx (listed in code 10) WITHOUT fixation  | *   | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS   | *   | L    | L      |
| 40   | Oropharynx   | *   | RE   | RE     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 45   | Code 20, 30, or 40 with tumor fixation  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 50   | Larynx  | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 51   | OBSOLETE: converted to 45<br>Any of codes 10-40 WITH fixation of tumor or fixation, NOS   | *   | RE   | RE     |
| 55   | Fixation of hemilarynx or larynx  | T3  | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Soft tissues of neck including<br>Prelaryngeal strap muscles<br>Subcutaneous fat          | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 61   | Esophagus   | T4a | RE   | RE     |
| 62   | Thyroid gland   | T4a | D    | RE     |
| 63   | Cricoid cartilage<br>Thyroid cartilage  | T4a | D    | RE     |
| 64   | Prevertebral fascia/muscle(s)   | T4b | RE   | RE     |
| 65   | Carotid artery  | T4b | D    | RE     |
| 66   | Hyoid bone  | T4a | D    | D      |
| 70   | Mediastinal structures  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | T4b | D    | D      |
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | T0  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | TX  | U    | U      |

\* For Extension codes 10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 45, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size and CS Extension as shown in the Specific Extension Codes with Size Table for this site.

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS TS/Ext-Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement  | N0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level II node<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Upper deep cervical<br>Upper jugular<br>Level III node<br>Middle deep cervical<br>Mid jugular<br>Level IV node<br>Lower deep cervical<br>Lower jugular<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Mandibular<br>Regional lymph node, NOS                | *   | RN   | RN     |
| 11   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level I node<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Level VI node<br>Anterior deep cervical<br>Laterotracheal<br>Paralaryngeal<br>Paratracheal<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Pretracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal<br>Other groups<br>Intraparotid<br>Parapharyngeal<br>Periparotid<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Sub-occipital                                    | *   | D    | RN     |
| 12   | Single positive ipsilateral regional node:<br>Level V node<br>Posterior cervical<br>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse<br>cervical)<br>(upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that<br>define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)<br>Level VII node<br>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS<br>Mets at DX)<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) | *   | D    | D      |
| 18   | Stated as N1, no other information  | N1  | RN   | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 19          | Stated as N2a, no other information   | N2a        | RN          | RN            |
| 20          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 21          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 22          | Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12   | *          | D           | D             |
| 29          | Stated as N2b, no other information   | N2b        | RN          | RN            |
| 30          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 31          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | RN            |
| 32          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple  | *          | D           | D             |
| 40          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 41          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | RN            |
| 42          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes   | *          | D           | D             |
| 49          | Stated as N2c, no other information   | N2c        | RN          | RN            |
| 50          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 51          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | RN            |
| 52          | Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12:<br>Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or<br>contralateral,<br>AND not stated if single or multiple | *          | D           | D             |
| 60          | Stated as N2, NOS   | N2NOS      | RN          | RN            |
| 70          | Stated as N3, no other information  | N3         | RN          | RN            |
| 80          | Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information  | *          | RN          | RN            |
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record  | NX         | U           | U             |

\* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

## CS Staging Schemas

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Reg Nodes Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 08/14/2006)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| Code | Description  | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|--|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | No; none   | M0  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Distant lymph node(s)<br>Mediastinal<br>Distant lymph node(s), NOS   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 40   | Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Carcinomatosis     | M1  | D    | D      |
| 50   | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | M1  | D    | D      |
| 99   | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | MX  | U    | U      |

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes                           |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters) |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 989  | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990  | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991  | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992  | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993  | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994  | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995  | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996  | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997  | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999  | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

### **Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**

#### **CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved                                |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved                                 |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved                                 |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved                            |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved                    |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved                     |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes   |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pyriiform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description  |
|------|--|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement |

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|-------------|---|
| 100         | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001         | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110         | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101         | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011         | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111         | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999         | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

CS Staging Schemas

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

C14.0, C14.2, C14.8

C14.0 Pharynx, NOS

C14.2 Waldeyer ring

C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity

**Note:** AJCC does not define TNM staging for this site.

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| CS Tumor Size     | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 -</b> Size of Lymph Nodes   | <b>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website:</b><br>Histology Exclusion Table<br>AJCC Stage |
| CS Extension      | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 2 -</b> Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| CS TS/Ext-Eval    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 3 -</b> Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck   |  |
| CS Lymph Nodes    | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 4 -</b> Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck                                       |  |
| CS Reg Nodes Eval | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 5 -</b> Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck  |  |
| Reg LN Pos        | <b>CS Site-Specific Factor 6 -</b> Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck |  |
| Reg LN Exam       |  |  |
| CS Mets at DX     |  |  |
| CS Mets Eval      |  |  |

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Extension (Revised: 12/10/2003)

**Note:** Definition of Adjacent Structures: Connective tissues large enough to be given a specific name would be considered adjacent structures. For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to less than 60 in the schemes for ill-defined or non-specific sites.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial   | NA  | IS   | IS     |
| 10   | Invasive tumor confined to site of origin                                       | NA  | L    | L      |
| 30   | Localized, NOS  | NA  | L    | L      |
| 40   | More than one region of pharynx involved (oropharynx, nasopharynx, hypopharynx) | NA  | RE   | RE     |
| 50   | Pharynx and oral cavity involved  | NA  | RE   | RE     |
| 55   | Any of codes 10-50 WITH fixation  | NA  | RE   | RE     |
| 60   | Extension to adjacent structures (See note)                                     | NA  | RE   | RE     |
| 80   | Further contiguous extension  | NA  | D    | D      |



## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 95   | No evidence of primary tumor  | NA  | U    | U      |
| 99   | Unknown extension<br>Primary tumor cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | NA  | U    | U      |

### Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

**CS TS/Ext-Eval** (Revised: 03/17/2004)

| Code | Description                  | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9    | Not applicable for this site | NA            |

### Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/15/2006)

**Note 1:** For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

**Note 2:** For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

**Note 3:** If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

**Note 4:** For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

| Code | Description   | TNM | SS77 | SS2000 |
|------|---|-----|------|--------|
| 00   | None; no regional lymph node involvement  | NA  | NONE | NONE   |
| 10   | Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral:<br>Cervical, NOS<br>Internal jugular, NOS<br>Deep cervical, NOS:<br>Lower, NOS<br>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)<br>Middle<br>Upper, NOS:<br>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)<br>Mandibular, NOS<br>Submandibular (submaxillary)<br>Submental<br>Paratracheal<br>Recurrent laryngeal nerve chain<br>Prelaryngeal<br>Delphian node<br>Retropharyngeal<br>Regional lymph node(s), NOS | NA  | RN   | RN     |
| 12   | Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral:<br>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)   | NA  | D    | D      |
| 80   | Lymph nodes, NOS  | NA  | RN   | RN     |

**SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007**

**CS Staging Schemas**

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 99          | Unknown; not stated<br>Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | NA         | U           | U             |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites**

**CS Reg Nodes Eval** (Revised: 03/17/2004)

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>           | <b>Staging Basis</b> |
|-------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 9           | Not applicable for this site | NA                   |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites**

**Reg LN Pos**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites**

**Reg LN Exam**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites**

**CS Mets at DX** (Revised: 02/22/2005)

**Note:** Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

| <b>Code</b> | <b>Description</b>   | <b>TNM</b> | <b>SS77</b> | <b>SS2000</b> |
|-------------|--|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 00          | No; none   | NA         | NONE        | NONE          |
| 10          | Distant lymph node(s), including:<br>Mediastinal   | NA         | D           | D             |
| 40          | Distant metastasis, NOS<br>Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10)<br>Carcinomatosis     | NA         | D           | D             |
| 50          | (10) + (40)<br>Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases   | NA         | D           | D             |
| 99          | Unknown if distant metastasis<br>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record | NA         | U           | U             |

## CS Staging Schemas

## Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

## CS Mets Eval (Revised: 03/17/2004)

| Code | Description                  | Staging Basis |
|------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 9    | Not applicable for this site | NA            |

## Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

## CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

**Note:** Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

| Code    | Description  |
|---------|--|
| 000     | No involved regional nodes   |
| 001-988 | 001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)   |
| 989     | 989 millimeters or larger  |
| 990     | Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given   |
| 991     | Described as "less than 1cm"   |
| 992     | Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"  |
| 993     | Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"  |
| 994     | Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"  |
| 995     | Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"  |
| 996     | Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"  |
| 997     | Described as "more than 6cm"   |
| 999     | Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated<br>Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

## CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/17/2007)

**Note 1:** Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code extracapsular extension in any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX in this field.

**Note 2:** A statement of the presence or absence of extracapsular extension in a pathology report takes priority over clinical assessment. However, if the pathology report contains no statement about extracapsular extension, either positive or negative, the clinical assessment should be coded. If nodes are involved but there is neither a clinical assessment of extranodal extension nor a statement about it in the pathology report, use code 999.

CS Staging Schemas

**Note 3:** According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No extracapsular extension  |
| 001  | Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically<br>Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically            |
| 005  | Extracapsular extension present pathologically  |
| 888  | Not applicable; no lymph node involvement   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites**

**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III   |
| 100  | Level I lymph node(s) involved  |
| 010  | Level II lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Level III lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Level I and II lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level I and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 011  | Level II and III lymph nodes involved   |
| 111  | Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved  |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## CS Staging Schemas

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites****CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal  |
| 100  | Level IV lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Level V lymph node(s) involved  |
| 001  | Retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 110  | Level IV and V lymph nodes involved   |
| 101  | Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved  |
| 111  | Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites****CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes |
| 100  | Level VI lymph node(s) involved                               |
| 010  | Level VII lymph node(s) involved                              |
| 001  | Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved        |
| 110  | Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved                         |
| 101  | Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved   |
| 011  | Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved  |

## CS Staging Schemas

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 111  | Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved   |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

**Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites****CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

**Note:** Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 000  | No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement                  |
| 100  | Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved   |
| 010  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved   |
| 001  | Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved  |
| 110  | Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved                                      |
| 101  | Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved   |
| 011  | Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                                       |
| 111  | Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved                      |
| 999  | Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated<br>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed<br>Not documented in patient record |

## Surgery Codes

**Pharynx****Tonsil C090–C099, Oropharynx C100–C109, Nasopharynx C110–C119****Pyriiform Sinus C129, Hypopharynx C130–C139, Pharynx C140****(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)****Codes**

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

15 Stripping

**No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–15**

20 Local tumor excision, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

**Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH**

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]

25 Laser excision

28 Stripping

**Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–28**

30 Pharyngectomy, NOS

31 Limited/partial pharyngectomy; tonsillectomy, bilateral tonsillectomy

32 Total pharyngectomy

40 Pharyngectomy WITH laryngectomy OR removal of contiguous bone tissue, NOS  
(does NOT include total mandibular resection)[**SEER Notes:** Code 40 includes mandibulectomy (marginal, segmental, hemi-, and/or laryngectomy)  
NOS Contiguous bone tissue refers to the mandible]

41 WITH laryngectomy (laryngopharyngectomy)

42 WITH bone [mandibulectomy]

43 WITH both 41 and 42

[**SEER Notes:** Use code 40 when the patient had a pharyngectomy and maybe some sort of mandibulectomy and/or maybe a laryngectomy, but the exact procedures are not clear. Use code 41 when the patient had pharyngectomy and laryngectomy but no mandibulectomy. Use code 42 when the patient had pharyngectomy and mandibulectomy but no laryngectomy. Use code 43 when it is certain that the patient had both a mandibulectomy and laryngectomy in addition to the pharyngectomy]

## SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

### Surgery Codes

- 50 Radical pharyngectomy (includes total mandibular resection), NOS
  - 51 WITHOUT laryngectomy
  - 52 WITH laryngectomy
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY



Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, C170–C179, C239, C240–C249, C260–C269, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759  
(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

- 00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY
- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
  - 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
  - 13 Cryosurgery
  - 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

- 20 Local tumor excision, NOS
  - 26 Polypectomy
  - 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- [**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]
- 25 Laser excision

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

- 30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site
- 40 Total surgical removal of primary site; enucleation
  - 41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)
- 50 Surgery stated to be “debulking”
- 60 Radical surgery  
Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs  
[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

**This page left blank**